

World We Live In

A Textbook of Social Science

Help-kit

6-8

Written by :
Rahul Thakur
Samar Singh



World We Live In-6

1. The Earth in Space

GEOGRAPHY

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Celestial bodies are all those objects that we see in the sky. They include stars, planets, satellites, asteroids, meteoroids and comets.
2. The Earth is known as the blue planet.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. a. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Earth** takes 365 days and 6 hours to complete one revolution around the sun.
2. **Mercury** is the smallest planet.
3. Moon is a natural **satellite** of the earth.
4. Neptune is the **coldest** planet in the solar system.
5. The heavenly bodies revolving around the sun are called **planets**.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Closest Planet → a. Mars
2. Farthest planet → b. Saturn
3. Blue planet → c. Neptune
4. Red planet → d. Mercury
5. 62 moons → e. Moon
6. Satellite → f. Earth

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. false 2. true 3. true 4. false 5. true

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Stars are different from planets in many ways. Stars are self luminous bodies and are very big in size. Each star is a huge mass of hot gases. Planets, on the other hand, do not have their own heat and light. They reflect the light of their nearest star. They are far smaller than the stars. Planets are made of both rocks and gases.
2. Of the millions and millions of stars in the sky, some appear to be in groups, forming definite patterns. These groups, which can be recognised by the shapes they form, are called constellations. The Great Bear, Orion, Southern Cross, Scorpius, Cassiopeia are some of the constellations.
3. **According to the distance :** Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune (Nearest to Farthest).
According to the size : Mercury, Mars, Venus, Earth, Neptune, Uranus, Saturn, Jupiter (Smallest to Largest)
4. Terrestrial planets are those planets which are composed primarily of silicate rocks or metals. Within the Solar system, the terrestrial planets are the inner planets closest to the Sun, i.e., Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars.

Jovian Planets are gas giants, composed primarily of hydrogen and helium gas with vary degrees of heavier elements. Within the Solar System, four planets exist—Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune.

5. Thousands of small celestial bodies revolve around the Sun between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. These are called asteroids or minor planets.
6. A meteor is a small piece of rock, etc. in a space. When it enters the Earth's atmosphere it makes a bright line in the night sky.
Comets are small and irregularly shaped heavenly bodies which are composed of a mixture of ice, dust and frozen gases. They revolve around the sun in an elliptical orbit.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The universe is defined as the totality of everything that exists including all physical matters and energy, the planets, stars, galaxies, etc. Humans are also a part of this universe.

The cloud of the gases or dust which is believed to be the mother of the universe, is known as a nebula. Nebula is a Latin word, meaning dust and cloud. It absorbs, emits and reflects lights from the stars. It does not have its own light.

The universe is so huge that it is difficult to imagine its size. The night sky that we see with all its celestial bodies is just a tiny part of the universe.

2. Our Earth is a unique planet in the whole of the solar system in the sense that it provides all things which are necessary for the growth and development of life. For example, water, oxygen and soil. It is also called blue planet because 71 per cent of its surface is covered with water. If we see it from the space, it appears blue in colour. It lies at a suitable distance from the Sun. It is evident from the fact that scientists are estimating that a slight deviation of about 10 per cent either close or away from the Sun can lead to the destruction of life on it. It is so because in the earlier case, the Earth would become too hot, and in the latter case, too cold. In such conditions, life would perish away. Earth has seasons, day and night, elements of weather and climate like pressure, temperature, winds, etc. which provide uniqueness to it.

3. **Mercury :** It is the closest planet to the sun and the second smallest planet in the solar system. It takes only 88 days to complete one revolution.

Venus : Venus is also known as the morning star and evening star. Astronomers refer to Venus as Earth's twin planet. Both are similar in size, mass, density and volume. However, Venus is very different from earth. It has no oceans and is surrounded by a heavy atmosphere composed mainly of carbon dioxide with no water vapour.

Mars : It is the fourth planet from the Sun and is also called the Red planet. The rocks, soil and sky have a red or pink hue. The atmosphere of Mars is quite different from that of Earth. It is composed of carbon dioxide with small amounts of other gases.

Jupiter : It is the fifth planet from the Sun and the largest planet in the solar system. If Jupiter would have been hollow, more than one

thousand earths could fit inside. The atmosphere mainly is composed of hydrogen and helium.

Saturn : It is the sixth planet from the sun and is the second largest in the solar system. Saturn is visibly flattened at the poles. It is the only planet less dense than water. The wind blow at high speeds on Saturn. Saturn's ring system makes the planet one of the most beautiful planets in the solar system.

Uranus : It is the seventh planet from the sun and is the third largest in the solar system. Uranus has atleast 27 moons. It rotates about its axis once every 17 hrs and 14 minutes.

Neptune : It is the outermost planet. Neptune orbits the sun every 165 years. It has 14 moons. Neptune is similar to Uranus in size and structure. The two are called the 'Twin Giants'.

4. Moon is the natural satellite of the earth. It revolves around the Earth and completes one revolution in 27 days and 8 hours. At the same time, it takes equal time for completing one rotation on its axis. Satellites don't have their own light so does the moon. It reflects the light received from the stars in the space. It is one-fourth of the size of its mother planet that is, Earth. Its distance from the Earth is 3,84,400 kilometres and its diameter is 3,480 kilometres. It is smaller in size, so it exerts very little gravitational force, i.e. only one-sixth of the Earth.

With the passage of time, man progressed and Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin landed on the surface of the moon on 20 July 1969. Neil Armstrong was the first person to set foot on the moon's surface followed by Edwin Aldrin.

2. Latitudes and Longitudes

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. A map can be defined as a two-dimensional representation of the whole or part of the earth, drawn to scale, on a flat surface.
2. Torrid zone, Temperate zone, Frigid zone.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. a. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The Earth is almost **spherical** in shape.
2. All **latitudes** are parallel to each other.
3. The Earth is divided into three **heat zones**.
4. The local time of a place is calculated with the help of **longitude**.
5. A **Great Circle** is a circle drawn on a globe that divides the Earth into two equal halves.

D. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Globes are very useful in schools and colleges and study of Geography. Relationships between the Earth and the Sun including the length of day, time differences and satellite paths can very well be demonstrated through a globe. Since globe is not fixed, it can be rotated the same way

as a potter's wheel is rotated. Countries, continents and oceans are shown in their correct size on the globe. Navigators find out the shortest distance between two points with the help of a globe. But a globe has its limitations. Details like small towns and villages, roads and railways cannot be shown on a globe of usual size. It would need a large sized globe. Moreover, it is difficult to carry it everywhere and every time for geographical references.

2. If you look at the globe, you will notice some vertical or horizontal lines drawn on them. These lines are drawn in a semi-circular or circular way. This network of lines is called grid. These lines are called Latitudes and Longitudes.

Importance of Latitudes

- These also help us to find out the exact location of a place.
- These help us to divide the earth into different Heat Zones and help us to form an idea of the temperature of a place.
- These help us to find out the distance of a place from the Equator. (1° Latitude = 111 km)

Importance of Longitudes

- These help us to locate a place on the globe.
 - The local time of a place is calculated with the help of longitude.
3. The longitude drawn in the middle of a map or globe from North to South is called Prime Meridian (0° Longitude). It divides the map or globe into two hemispheres, Western Hemisphere and Eastern Hemisphere. The Prime Meridian which passes through the Royal Observatory in UK is 0 degrees Longitude. This is taken as the standard for measurement of time globally.
 4. All latitudes are parallel to each other and the vertical distance between two latitudes is equal all over the Earth.

There are 180 parallels of latitudes, 90 to the north and 90 to the south of the Equator. Of these, some are considered important parallels as they are used as references points in geography. These are the Equator (0°), the Tropic of Cancer ($23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ N), the Tropic of Capricorn ($23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ S), the Arctic Circle ($66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ N), and the Antarctic Circle ($66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ S).

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The latitudes divide the Earth into three heat zones on the basis of the amount of heat received from the Sun. These heat zones are as follows :

Torrid Zone : 'Torrid' means hot. The belt that lies between the Equator and the two tropics (Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn) receives direct rays of the Sun and experiences high temperatures throughout the year. This is also called 'Tropical Zone'. The southern part of India lies in the Torrid Zone.

Temperate Zone : 'Temperate' means moderate, i.e., neither very hot nor very cold. The areas between the Tropic of Cancer and the Arctic Circle in the Northern Hemisphere and the Tropic of Capricorn and the Antarctic Circle in the Southern Hemisphere are the two Temperate Zones.

Frigid Zone : 'Frigid' means cold. The areas between the Arctic Circle

and North Pole and Antarctic Circle and South Pole are the two Frigid Zones.

2. **Longitude** : Longitudes are the imaginary vertical lines or semicircles drawn from North Pole to South Pole. Longitudes are also called meridians. The longitude drawn in the middle of a map or globe from North to South is called Prime Meridian (0° Longitude). It divides the map or globe into two hemispheres, Western Hemisphere and Eastern Hemisphere. The longitudes drawn in the Western Hemisphere are called West Longitudes and the longitudes drawn in the Eastern Hemisphere are called East Longitudes. All longitudes meet at the poles. So they are not parallel.

Time : The Prime Meridian which passes through the Royal Observatory in UK is 0 degrees Longitude. This is taken as the standard for measurement of time globally. The world has been divided into twenty four different time zones for ease of calculation. All countries have adjusted their time according to these time zones. Hence, every country now has its own central meridian which forms their own national standard time.

3. Reading Maps

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Maps help us answer basic geographic questions like Where am I? What else is here? Where am I going?
2. Political map shows boundaries of different countries or territories of the same country.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. b. 3. b. 4. b.

C. Give one word for the following :

- Ans.** 1. A collection of maps and important information compiled as a book. **Atlas**
2. Maps drawn to show smaller areas of land for which the scale is comparatively larger. **Large scale maps**
3. Maps drawn to show larger areas of land for which the scale is comparatively smaller. **Small scale maps**
4. A table used on maps and charts to interpret symbols. **Legend**

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Maps** are a rich source of information.
2. Climatic conditions can be depicted through **thematic map**.
3. Generally, the top of the map shows **North** direction.
4. **Compass** was always a reliable instrument.
5. A **plan** is a drawing of a small area on a large scale.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. A thematic map is a special purpose map which gives some specific kind of information. For instance, if we want to give particular

information pertaining to railways or population distribution, it is given through a thematic map. As the word suggests thematic maps project certain themes like air routes, climatic conditions, rainfall pattern, etc.

2. Most maps contain an arrow marked with the letter 'N' at the upper right hand corner. This arrow shows the north direction. And when you know the north, you can find out other directions.

Generally the top of the map shows North direction, bottom of the map shows South direction. West lies on the left side of the map and East is on the right side of the map.


These four main directions are called the cardinal points. Other four intermediate directions are North East (NE) South East (SE), South West (SW) and North West (NW).]

3. **Conventional symbols :** Symbols are signs, shapes, or objects that are used on maps to represent particular features, such as mountains, rivers, forests, railway tracks, bridges, airports, temples, etc. In Geography, you will find conventional symbols that are used on different maps to represent the same things. These make map reading easy by providing a lot of information on a map without making it crowded. Besides, they act like a special language which can help anyone looking at a map to understand it.

International Boundry : 

Dam : 

Headquarter of state : 

Tobacco : 

Manganese : 

4. A plan is a drawing of a small area on a large-scale. It gives detailed information e.g. the plan of a house to be constructed or the plan of your classroom.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. There are three components of maps : scale, directions and symbols.

Scale : The scale of distance : A map represents a portion of the Earth's surface on a reduced size paper. So you need to know how much reduced is the size of the map or what is the actual distance on the ground represented by the distance on the map between two points.

It is the scale of the map that gives us this knowledge. The relationship between the map distance and the corresponding ground distance (actual distance) is called the scale of the map.

Directions : Most maps contain an arrow marked with the letter 'N' at the upper right hand corner. This arrow shows the north direction. And when you know the north, you can find out other directions.

Generally the top of the map shows North direction, bottom of the map shows South direction. West lies on the left side of the map and East is on the right side of the map.

These four main directions are called the cardinal points. Other four intermediate directions are North East (NE) South East (SE), South West (SW) and North West (NW).

Symbols : Symbols are signs, shapes, or objects that are used on maps to represent particular features, such as mountains, rivers, forests, railway tracks, bridges, airports, temples, etc. In Geography, you will find conventional symbols that are used on different maps to represent the same things. These make map reading easy by providing a lot of information on a map without making it crowded. Besides, they act like a special language which can help anyone looking at a map to understand it.

2. There are three types of maps : Political Map, Physical Map and Thematic Map.

Political Map : Boundaries of different countries or the territories of the same country can be depicted through political maps.

Physical Map : Relief features of the Earth's surface such as mountains, plains, oceans, etc., can be shown with the help of physical maps. The physical maps are coloured according to their features. For example, mountains are coloured in brown, water bodies in blue, plains in green and deserts in yellow.

Thematic Map : A thematic map is a special purpose map which gives some specific kind of information. For instance, if we want to give particular information pertaining to railways or population distribution, it is given through a thematic map. As the word suggests thematic maps project certain themes like air routes, climatic conditions, rainfall pattern, etc.

4. Rotation and Revolution

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. During equinoxes (21 March and 23 September every year) nights and days are equal.
2. 21 March and 23 September.
3. Orbit.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. b. 3. a. 4. c.

C. Encircle the correct word :

- Ans.** 1. At the poles, Equator all places have days and nights of equal length throughout the year.
2. The Earth is a sphere triangle.
3. On December 22, the rays of the Sun fall vertically on the Tropic of Capricorn Equator.
4. The Earth's orbit is circle elliptical in shape.]
5. Seasons are mainly due to the revolution rotation of the earth.

D. Unscramble the following to make correct words :

- Ans.** 1. It is a fixed path in which the Earth revolves around the Sun : **ORBIT** (TIBRO)
2. The movement of a planet around the Sun in a fixed elliptical path : **REVOLUTION** (ITERNOVLOU)

- The spinning of the planet on its own axis : **ROTATION** (ORTIAONT)
- The Earth's position during the summer and winter seasons : **SOLSTICE** (LSITOSCE)

E. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
- The Earth's axis is an **imaginary** line that passes through to centre.
 - The Earth completes its one rotation in **24** hours.
 - When it is summer in India, it is **winter** in Australia.
 - The **polar** areas experiences six months long day and six months long night.
 - Winter Solstice occurs on **22 December**.

F. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. False.

G. Match the following :

- Ans.**
- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Inclination of the Earth's axis | → | a. 21st June |
| 2. Winter Solstice | → | b. 21st March |
| 3. Summer Solstice | → | c. Day and night |
| 4. Rotation | → | d. $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ |
| 5. Equinox | → | e. 22nd December |

H. Differentiate between the following :

- Ans.**
- Rotation :** The Earth spins on its axis like a top. The Earth's axis is an imaginary line that passes through its centre.

Revolution : Besides rotating on its axis, the Earth also keeps on revolving around the Sun in a fixed path called the orbit.
 - Equinox :** On 21 of March and 23 September every year the Sun's rays fall vertically on the Equator. These days are known as the equinoxes.

Solstice : When the sun shines vertically on the Tropic of cancer or Capricorn, it is called the Solstice.

I. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
- Seasons are caused mainly due to the revolution of the Earth around the sun and the inclination of its axis. If the direct rays of sun fall on the Tropic of Cancer ($23\frac{1}{2}^\circ\text{N}$) so most part of the northern hemisphere has summer season while the southern hemisphere experiences winter. This position of Earth is called the summer solstice.
If the direct rays of sun fall on the tropic of capricorn ($23\frac{1}{2}^\circ\text{S}$) so most part of the southern hemisphere has summer season while the northern hemisphere experience winter. This position of earth is called the winter solstice.
 - The Earth's axis is not at right angle to the plane of its orbit with which it makes an angle of $66\frac{1}{2}$. this inclination of the Earth's axis causes unequal days and nights in different parts of the Earth.
 - Due to the inclination of the Earth in one direction, the Northern Hemisphere remains inclined towards the Sun during six months every year. Every point in this part of the Earth remains lighted for a longer time. Thus, the days in this part are longer, in contrast, the Southern Hemisphere are shorter. During the following six months the Southern Hemisphere is inclined towards the Sun then the days in this hemisphere

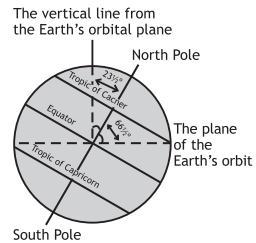
are longer. At this time the Northern Hemisphere has shorter days.

When the Northern Hemisphere is tilted towards the Sun, the north area of the Arctic Circle gets continuous light. All places lying within the Polar or the Arctic Circle will have 24 hours of day and no night at all.

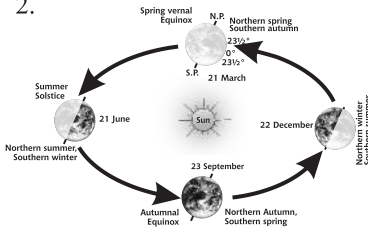
4. As the Earth's axis is tilted, on 21 June the direct rays of Sun fall on the Tropic of Cancer ($23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N). As the North Pole is inclined towards the Sun, it has six months of day. On the other hand, during this time the South Pole has six months of night as it is away from the Sun. Days are longer than the night in the northern hemisphere during this period and the longest day is on 21 June. Most part of the northern hemisphere has summer season while the southern hemisphere experiences winter. This position of the Earth is called the Summer Solstice.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. When the Earth moves on its axis, half of its surface faces the Sun at a time while the other half faces away from the Sun. As a result, in that part of the Earth that receives sunlight, it is day while in the other part it is night. This phenomenon of alternating day and night is the result of the Earth's movement on its axis we call this movement Rotation, which it completes in 24 hours or in one day.



2.



5. Realms of the Earth

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Lithosphere, Hydrosphere, Atmosphere, Biosphere.
 2. Earth is called a watery planet or a blue planet because 71% of the Earth's surface is covered by water.
 3. Biosphere tends to encompass all the other spheres where all types of flora and fauna live.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. b. 3. a. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The top layer of the lithosphere is known as the **crust**.
 2. Huge bodies of water are called **Ocean**.
 3. The deepest place in the Earth is the **Mariana trench** in **Pacific Ocean**.
 4. **Australia** is the smallest of all the continents.

5. The atmosphere extends to about **1600 kilometers**.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. The island continent → a. Lithosphere
2. The biggest ocean → b. Asia
3. Land → c. Pacific Ocean
4. The largest continent → d. Australia
5. The frozen continent → e. Antarctica

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The upper surface of the Earth which is made up of rocks and soil is called the Lithosphere. Its top layer is known as the 'crust'. This crust is thicker under continents but thin under oceans. The Lithosphere is uneven-the highest point being the Mt. Everest which is 8,848 metres high and the deepest being the Mariana Trench which is 11,022 metres below sea level.
2. The atmosphere may be divided into five layers based on composition, temperature and other properties. Starting from the bottom, the layers are called the troposphere, stratosphere, mesosphere, thermosphere, and exosphere. These layers vary in thickness.
3. The areas of warm temperature have low pressure and the areas of cold temperature have high pressure. Thus, the air in warm regions becomes light and rises, creating low pressure and in cold areas the air becomes heavy creating high pressure.
4. The various domains of the Earth interdependent on each other. Oxygen is inhaled by animals and carbon dioxide by plants. Nitrogen is required for plant growth. Carbon dioxide also keeps the Earth warm by absorbing the heat given out by Earth.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. **Lithosphere :** The upper surface of the Earth which is made up of rocks and soil is called the Lithosphere. Its top layer is known as the 'crust'. This crust is thicker under continents but thin under oceans. The Lithosphere is uneven-the highest point being the Mt. Everest which is 8,848 metres high and the deepest being the Mariana Trench which is 11,022 metres below sea level.

71% of the Earth's surface is covered by water and only 29% forms the land surface. While the land surface is called continents, the vast area of water surrounding the continents is called oceans. All these oceans are interconnected and therefore the level of water remains the same everywhere. This is called the 'sea-level' and all heights and depths are measured with reference to this level.

Hydrosphere : This is the realm of the Earth that comprises water. The hydrosphere contains all forms of water such as snow and ice of the glaciers, water vapour, and water in the oceans, seas, lakes, ponds and rivers. Water is also present under the crust in the form of aquifers. Oceans are the great water bodies that are interconnected and are very deep. There are four oceans on the Earth: The Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Indian Ocean, and the Arctic Ocean.

2. **Biosphere :** The word 'biosphere' has been derived from the Greek

word 'bio' which means 'life'. It tends to encompass all the other spheres where all types of flora and fauna live. Hence, interaction between atmosphere, hydrosphere and lithosphere makes biosphere. From the point of view of living organisms, it is a global ecosystem which provides a habitat to all sorts of life form.

The organisms in the biosphere may broadly be divided into plant kingdom and animal kingdom. Each of these kingdoms consists of thousands of species greatly varying in size. The species in each kingdom are highly interdependent.

The three domains of the Earth interact with each other and affect each other in some way or the other, so there is a natural balance in all the three domains.

3. It is necessary to use the natural resources in such a way that the balance of natural resources is not disturbed. Overuse of natural resources by our present generation may deprive our future generations from these free gifts of nature and damage all forms of life on Earth. This unique planet can remain unique only when proper balance is maintained among the three domains of the Earth i.e., the Lithosphere, Hydrosphere and Biosphere. Instead of immediate gain, we should think of sustainable economic development.

6. Major Landforms of the Earth

Exercises

- Ans.** 1. Iron, copper, gold, diamonds, coal.
2. Himalayas in Asia has been named as the young fold mountains because of its recent origin.
3. Transportation is easier, the soil is fertile and water is also available. It is also easy to build houses and factories than on mountain slopes. Hence, plains will always be more populated.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1 a. 2. b. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The **external forces** act from inside the Earth towards the surface.
2. Vosges in Europe is an example of **Block** mountains.
3. The wearing down of the Earth's surface is called **degradation**.
4. Volcanic mountains are formed due to **Volcanic eruptions**.
5. **River** is a precious gift of nature.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. True.

E. Differentiate between the following :

- Ans.** 1. **Mountains :** Mountains are rocky masses of land considerably higher than their surroundings. Some mountains are even higher than the clouds. The mountains may have a small summit and a broad base. As you go higher, the climate becomes colder. Some mountains are permanently covered with ice. You can see rivers of ice called glaciers in some mountains.

Plateaus : A plateau is a flat tableland, reasonably high with steep slopes on one or more sides. Its height may vary from ten hundred metres to several thousand metres. Like mountains, plateaus too may be young or old. The Deccan Plateau of India and the plateaus of Brazil and Australia are a few old plateaus of the world with the height ranging between 4,000 to 6,000 metres above sea level. The Tibet Plateau is the highest plateau in the world.

2. **Plains :** Plains are relatively flat and low-lying land. These are called lowlands. There is hardly any difference between the highest and the lowest points. Some plains are extremely flat whereas, there are some which may be undulating, i.e., gently rising and falling like waves.

Plateaus : A plateau is a flat tableland, reasonably high with steep slopes on one or more sides. Its height may vary from ten hundred metres to several thousand metres. Like mountains, plateaus too may be young or old. The Deccan Plateau of India and the plateaus of Brazil and Australia are a few old plateaus of the world with the height ranging between 4,000 to 6,000 metres above sea level. The Tibet Plateau is the highest plateau in the world.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The various land forms on the Earth's surface are a result of two types of forces—internal and external.

The internal forces act from inside the Earth towards the surface. They act suddenly and cause an uplift or subsidence of the Earth's crust, leading to the formation of mountains and plateaus. Earthquakes and volcanic eruptions are examples of internal forces.

The external forces act on the surface of the Earth. They act slowly and wear down the highlands, depositing materials in the lowlands. Running water, moving ice, and waves are examples of external forces.

2. Mountains are very useful to us in many ways. Mountains are reservoirs of water. Many fresh water lakes and springs are found in the mountains.

They are also a storehouse of water. Many rivers originate from the 'glaciers' which are formed in mountains.

The soil present on mountain slopes and valleys is very fertile. So, these slopes are generally used for agriculture and for grazing livestock.

Forests on the mountain slopes are the source of herbs, softwood for paper, fuel wood, resins and habitat for animals.

Several sports are popular in the mountains.

They influence the climate and often act as climatic barriers.

They are storehouses of minerals and building stones.

3. Volcanic mountains are formed due to volcanic eruptions. The lava which flows out of a volcano, piles up on the Earth's surface. When this cools down, it forms a hard surface. Regular eruptions of lava, ash and rock, build up a mountain of large heights. Mount Fujiyama (Japan) and Mount Kilimanjaro (Africa) are examples of such kind of mountains which are formed by volcanic eruptions.

4. Grasslands are the plains where the rainfall is less and the vegetation is

dominated by grasses and other plants. Grasslands are located in every continent except Antarctica. There are two major types of grasslands in the world-temperate grasslands and tropical grasslands. The tropical grasslands are a transition between the hot deserts and tropical rainforests. Some wonderful sanctuaries are present in the tropical grasslands. The temperate grasslands are located north and south of the tropical region. The temperate grasslands are good for large scale cultivation and dairy farming.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. There are mainly three types of mountains: Fold Mountains, Block Mountains and Volcanic Mountains.

Fold Mountains : River brings huge amount of sediments with it and deposits it into the sea. When the forces from either sides start acting towards each other, then squeezing or buckling is experienced in the rock strata of the sedimentary deposit. Due to this buckling, folding takes place. This folding can take place at any scale. Sometimes the magnitude of compression is so great that it causes the strata of sediments to rise up in the form of a chain which is often termed as mountain chain.

Block Mountains : These mountains are formed in almost rectangular blocks when large areas are broken and displaced vertically. The uplifted blocks are termed as 'horsts' and the lowered blocks are called 'graben'. The Rhine Valley and the Vosges mountain in Europe are examples of such mountain systems.

Volcanic mountains : Volcanic mountains are formed due to volcanic eruptions. The lava which flows out of a volcano, piles up on the Earth's surface. When this cools down, it forms a hard surface. Regular eruptions of lava, ash and rock, build up a mountain of large heights. Mount Fujiyama (Japan) and Mount Kilimanjaro (Africa) are examples of such kind of mountains which are formed by volcanic eruptions.

2. There are the different kinds of plateaus :

Some plateaus are formed as a result of geological uplift or the slow upward movement of large parts of stable areas of the Earth's crust. The Chhotanagpur Plateau is one such plateau.

Certain plateaus lie between mountains formed in response to the collision of sections of the Earth's Crust. These are also called Intermontane Plateaus. The Tibetan Plateau was created as a result of the collision between the Indian plate and European plate.

Plateau formed as a result of many lava flows that spread over hundreds of thousands of square kilometres building up the land surface are called Volcanic or Lava plateaus. The Deccan Plateau is a lava plateau that was formed over a period of more than one million years.

Certain plateaus can form simply when the sides of a land are weathered away by erosion. These are known as 'Residual plateaus'. The Cumberland Plateau in U.S.A. is an example of this type.

3. Landforms are the creations of nature but since the dawn of civilisations on this Earth, man is dependent for its survival on them. People live in

almost all forms of landforms be they mountains, plateaus and plains. These landforms have a great bearing on man's life. A slight change in the form of earthquake, flashfloods or tectonic movements causes great damage to humans. On the other hand, man is also tempering with these landforms by cutting down forests, making highways in mountainous areas, which has disturbed these landforms a lot. So, there must be a midway in which both can coexist with each other.

7. Our Country—India

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

Ans. 1. India's major physical units are as follows:

- The Northern Mountains.
- The Northern Plains.
- The Great Indian Desert.
- The southern Plateau.
- The coastal Plains and off shore islands.

2. Latitudes = $8^{\circ}4'N$ and $37^{\circ}6'N$
Longitudes = $68^{\circ}7'N$ and $97^{\circ}25'E$

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. a. 2. a. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. India has a total area of **3.28 million square** km.
2. India is the **seventh** largest country in the world.
3. The most populous state of India is **Uttar Pradesh**.
4. The Peninsular Plateau has two distinct parts **Malwa Plateau** and **Deccan Plateau**.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. False 5. True.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The Himalayan mountains are divided into three main parallel ranges. The northernmost range is the Great Himalaya or Himadri. This is the highest range. The world's highest peaks are located in this range. Middle Himalaya or Himachal lies to the South of Himadri. Many popular hill stations are located in this range. The Shiwalik is the southernmost range. It is the lowest range of the Himalayas.
2. These lie to the Himalayas. They are generally level and flat. These plains are formed by the alluvial deposits laid down by the rivers the Indus, the-Ganga, the Brahmaputra and their tributaries. These river plains provide fertile land for cultivation. This is the reason for high concentration of population in these plains.
3. **Western Ghats** : The hills bordering the western edge of this plateau are collectively called the Western Ghats. They consist of the Sahyadri, the nilgiri, the Anaimalai and the Cardamom Hills.

Eastern Ghats : The hills which form the eastern edge of the Deccan Plateau are collectively called the Eastern Ghats. They merge with the Western Ghats at the Nilgiris.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The Great Indian Desert

The Great Indian Desert is located in the state of Rajasthan and spreads across the northern part of Gujarat. It is also called the Thar Desert. This is dry and sandy stretch which extends up to Pakistan. The surface area comprises of sand dunes (hills of sand) which are separated by the sandy plains and low barren hills. This region receives a very scanty rainfall (less than 25 cm). Scrub vegetation consisting of short thorny plants and cacti are found in the region.

The Coastal Plains and off-shore Islands

To the West of the Western Ghats and the East of the Eastern Ghats lie the Coastal Plains. The western coastal plains are narrower than the eastern coastal plains.

The eastern coastal plains are known as the Northern Circars in the north and the Coromandel Coast in the south. The western coastal plains are known as the Konkan Coast in the north and the Malabar Coast in the south.

2. The Himalayan Mountains are divided into three main parallel ranges :

(a) Great Himalaya/Himadri : The northernmost range is the Great Himalaya/Himadri. This is the highest range. The world's highest peaks are located in this range.

(b) Middle Himalaya/Himachal : South of Himadri is known as Middle Himalaya or Himachal. Many popular hill stations are located in this range.

(c) Shiwalik : The Shiwalik is the southernmost range. It is the lowest range of the Himalayas.

3. South of the Narmada Valley lies the triangle-shaped Deccan Plateau. It is bounded in the north by the Satpura Range, the Mahadeo Hills, Maikala Hills and Kaimur Hills. In the south it extends up to the tip of the peninsula. The hills bordering the western edge of this plateau are collectively called the Western Ghats. They consist of the Sahyadri, the Nilgiri, the Anaimalai and the Cardamom Hills. Anaimudi in Kerala (2,695 m) is the highest peak in peninsular India. The hills which form the eastern edge of the Deccan Plateau are collectively called the Eastern Ghats. They merge with the Western Ghats at the Nilgiris.

8. India : Climate, Natural Vegetation and Wild Life

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The monsoon is a seasonal wind which blows in a fixed direction during a particular season.
2. The natural type of vegetation is most common in India. That can be

divided into the following types : The Tropical Rain Forests, Tropical Deciduous Forests, Thorny Forests.

3. Natural Vegetation found in India includes all types of small or big plants, grasses, shrubs and bushes.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. a. 3. a. 4. b.

C. Give one word for the following :

- Ans.** 1. The average condition of weather for a long time : **Climate**
2. The hot, dry and dusty wind : **Loo**
3. The forest found in the foothills of the Himalayas :

Tropical Deciduous Forests

4. A reserved area meant for preserving wildlife : **Biosphere**
5. The forest grown in high rainfall areas :

Tropical Evergreen Forests

D. Correct the following statements :

- Ans.** 1. Most of India receives rainfall during south west monsoon season.
2. Mountain Vegetation trees are also known as coniferous trees.
3. Vegetation of India can be divided into five types.
4. As we go higher and higher, the temperature decreases.
5. Cherrapunji in Meghalaya receives the world's highest rainfall.

E. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Weather** is the condition of atmosphere of an area at a particular time.
2. Retreating monsoon season is also called rest monsoon season.
3. Natural Natural is closely associated with climate.
4. **Sundari** is a well known species of mangrove forests.
5. There are **89** National Parks in India.

F. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True

G. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Rosewood → a. Jammu and Kashmir
2. Rainy Season → b. Tropical rain forest
3. Tiger → c. June-September
4. Drass and Kargil → d. Gir forest
5. Asiatic lions → e. Our national animal

H. Differentiate between the following :

- Ans.** 1. **Cold weather season :** During winter the north-east monsoon winds blow over India. A high pressure area develops in the northern plains due to cold climatic conditions from where the winds start blowing towards the areas of low pressure over the sea. While passing over the sea (Bay of Bengal), they pick up moisture and cause heavy rainfall on the coast of Tamil Nadu during this season.

Hot weather season : The hot weather season remains from the middle of March to June. The rays of the Sun are vertical along the Tropic of Cancer in the Northern Hemisphere. We find the temperature rising from the middle of March. The temperature increases from the south to the north.

2. **Advancing Monsoon season** : It begins in June and lasts till September. By the end of May, pressure over North India becomes lower due to the increasing temperature. This causes air from high-pressure zones over the Indian Ocean to move towards India as monsoon winds. These winds are moisture-laden and cause heavy rainfall in India. Since these winds, called the advancing monsoon.

Retreating Monsoon season : The months of October and November are known as the retreating monsoon season, when there is a withdrawal of the monsoon winds from India. By October as the temperature starts dropping, the low pressure zone in northern India becomes weak and cannot attract the monsoon winds. Thus, the southwest monsoon winds begin to retreat gradually and by early November they withdraw completely from India.

3. **Tropical rainforest** : These occur in regions of very heavy rainfall (more than 200 cms). The forests are very dense. Different trees shed their leaves at different times of the year in these forests. As they remain green throughout the year they are called 'evergreen forests'.

Tropical deciduous forest : This type of vegetation is most widespread and characteristic of the monsoon climate in general. This is the most common type of natural vegetation found in India. These forests are found in areas having 100-200 cm rainfall in a year.

4. **Tropical deciduous forest** : This type of vegetation is most widespread and characteristic of the monsoon climate in general. This is the most common type of natural vegetation found in India. These forests are found in areas having 100-200 cm rainfall in a year.

Thorn forests : In the arid regions (less-rainfall regions) of Rajasthan, Gujarat, Punjab and Haryana the annual rainfall is less than 50 cm. The vegetation here is less than 50 cm. The vegetation here consists of short trees like acacia, and thorny or waxy leaves.

I. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The climate of a place is determined by its latitudinal extent, altitude, position with respect to mountains, distance from the sea and by the winds and ocean currents. Therefore, we have different climate in different parts of the country. For example in Rajasthan places like Jaisalmer and Bikaner are very hot, while Drass and Kargil in Jammu and Kashmir experience temperatures below the freezing point. Moderate climate is found in areas like Mumbai near the coast line. Mawsynram in Meghalaya receives the highest rainfall in the world.
2. The months of October and November are known as the retreating monsoon season, when there is a withdrawal of the monsoon winds from India. By October as the temperature starts dropping, the low pressure zone in northern India becomes weak and cannot attract the monsoon winds. Thus, the southwest monsoon winds begin to retreat gradually and by early November they withdraw completely from India.
3. These occur in regions of very heavy rainfall (more than 200 cms). The forests are very dense. Different trees shed their leaves at different times

of the year in these forests. As they remain green throughout the year they are called 'evergreen forests'.

This type of vegetation is most widespread and characteristic of the monsoon climate in general. This is the most common type of natural vegetation found in India. These forests are found in areas having 100-200 cm rainfall in a year.

4. These wild animals and birds are kept in their natural habitat or environment only. Rhinoceros are mainly found in the north-east part of the country, mainly in Assam in the Kaziranga National Park.

A national park is an area which is very large and, hence, not disturbed by the human activities, where flora and fauna coexist with each other and flourish.

In the last few decades, several species of birds and animals have become extinct and some are on the verge of extinction. They are fighting for their survival. Man has started interfering and subjugating their personal space (their natural habitat, i.e. forests).

Some of the species which are on the verge of extinction are Indian bustard, cheetah and rhinoceros.

For saving these species from extinction, the government of India has set up 89 National Parks, 490 Wildlife Sanctuaries and 13 Biosphere Reserves so far.

J. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The climate of India is generally known as monsoon type. The word monsoon has come from the Arabic word *mausim* meaning season. The monsoon is a seasonal wind which blows in a fixed direction during a particular season. It means monsoon winds change with season. During summer, the monsoon winds blow from south-west direction from Indian Ocean towards India. It is known as South-West Monsoon.

2. Natural vegetation or plant life is closely associated with climate. Since there is great variety in the climate condition in different parts of India, the natural vegetation also greatly varies.

Natural vegetation includes all types of small or big plants, grasses, shrubs and bushes etc., which grow naturally. Vegetation of India can be divided into five types-Tropical Evergreen Forests, Tropical Deciduous Forests, Thorn Forests, Mountain Vegetation and Mangrove Forests.

Tropical Evergreen Forests : These occur in regions of very heavy rainfall (more than 200 cms). The forests are very dense. Different trees shed their leaves at different times of the year in these forests. As they remain green throughout the year they are called 'evergreen forests'.

Tropical Deciduous Forests : This type of vegetation is most widespread and characteristic of the monsoon climate in general. This is the most common type of natural vegetation found in India. These forests are found in areas having 100-200 cm rainfall in a year.

Thorn Forests : In the arid regions (less-rainfall regions) of Rajasthan, Gujarat, Punjab and Haryana the annual rainfall is less than 50 cm. The vegetation here is less than 50 cm. The vegetation here consists of short trees like acacia, and thorny or waxy leaves.

Mountain Vegetation : As you know that the temperature decreases as we go higher and higher in the mountains, so the natural vegetation also changes according to height. The tropical deciduous forests are found in the foothills of the Himalayas. These trees are called coniferous trees.

Mangrove Forest : These forests can survive in saline water. They are found mainly in Sunderbans of West Bengal and in the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. Sundari is a well known species of trees.

3. Forests provide shelter to a wide variety of wild life. There are thousands of species of animals and a large variety of reptiles, amphibians, mammals, birds, insects and worms which dwell in the forest.

Some of the big animals found in India are tigers, lions, rhinoceroses, elephants, wolves, zebras, giraffes, leopards, bears, jackals, wild goats etc.

The tiger is our national animal. It is found in various parts of the country. Sunderbans are the home of famous Bengal tiger. Gir forest in Gujarat is the home of Asiatic lions. Elephants and one horned rhinoceroses are found in the forests of Assam. Elephants are also found in Kerala and Karnataka. Camels and wild asses are found in the Great Indian desert and the Rann of Kutch. Wild goats, snow leopards, bears etc., are found in the Himalayan region. Besides these many other animals are found in our country such as, monkey, nilgai, cheetal etc.

1. When, Where and How?

HISTORY

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Prehistory is the period for which there are no written records.
2. Archaeology is the study of the remains of human life in the past.
3. Kautilya's *Arthashastra* and Kalhara's *Rajatarangins*.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. b. 4. a.

C. Correct the underlined words :

- Ans.** 1. History is the study of the past.
2. Recording events in the order in which they happened is called chronology.
3. The river Indus was called Sindhu in Sanskrit.
4. Harshacharita deals with the life and times of king Harshavardhana.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Initially, the study of history was limited to stories of the **rich** and the **powerful**.
2. **Protohistory** is the period between prehistory and the beginning of recorded history.
3. The dates in BCE are counted **backward** whereas those in CE are counted **forward**.
4. **Archaeology** is the study of the remains of human life in the past.

5. In India, manuscripts were usually written in **Sanskrit, Prakrit or Pali.**

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. False.

F. Match the following :

Ans. 1. *Arthashastra* → a. Study of the past
2. History → b. An important source of information
3. CE → c. Kautliya
4. Monuments → d. Language of South India
5. Tamil → e. Dates of events after Christ's birth

G. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. Manuscripts are documents that have been written by hand. Originally, they were written on stone or clay tablets. In India, early manuscripts were written on the dried bark of trees, thinly beaten copper plates and dried palm leaves. This is because paper has not available then.

2. Inscriptions are words written or engraved on rocks, pillars and the walls of temples, palaces, forts, etc. They tell us about the victories of rulers in battle, or donations made by people or rulers to temples and other places of worship.

3. The word India comes from the River Indus which was called Sindhu in Sanskrit. But the Iranians and the Greeks who entered our country through the north-western passes called it Hindos or the Indos. And hence the land east of the river was called India. According to the Vishnu Purana, "the country lying to the north of the ocean and to the south of Himalaya is called Bharat-varsha."

4. Firstly, history tells us about the life and deeds of great men. Some of them were great teachers and saints like Gautam Buddha, Mahavira, Guru Nanak and Kabir. Others were great rulers like Ashoka and Akbar. Still others were great poets or artists or those who made scientific discoveries.

Secondly, history tells us how languages have grown. It provides a clue to the food, dress and ornaments of the people in the past.

Thirdly, we cannot understand our present life without a knowledge of the past. All the great ideas, inventions, and the wonderful things we see around us had a beginning in the past.

H. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. History is the systematic record of past events. Historians, or people who study history, have regarded the year of the birth of Jesus Christ as the point from which dates are counted. For the dates of events before the birth of Christ, we use the acronym BCE (Before the Common Era). Similarly, the dates of events after Christ's birth are referred to as CE (Common Era). While the dates in BCE are counted backwards, those in CE are counted forwards.

2. The main source of information for history in archaeology. History on the other hand, is largely studied from written sources, such as manuscripts, inscriptions, coins and seals. Monuments are also an important source of information for historians.

Archaeology : Archaeology is the study of the remains of human life in

the past. Archaeologists carefully excavate places where ancient people lived.

Manuscripts : Manuscripts are an important source of information for historians. Manuscripts are documents that have been written by hand.

Inscriptions : Inscriptions are words written or engraved on rocks, pillars and the walls of temples, palaces, forts etc. They tell us about the victories of rulers in battle or donations made by people or rulers to temples and other places of worship.

Coins and Seals : Coins and seals are an important source of information for historians. Coins were issued by the ruler of a country to enable people to buy goods and services.

3. There are two sources of literature available to students of Indian history.

Religious literature : Literature dealing with religion is believed to be holy or religious. The four Vedas (Rigveda, Samaveda, Yajurveda and Atharvaveda) are the sacred literature of the Indo-Aryans. The famous works of the later Vedic period are the two Epics—The Ramayana and the Mahabharata. The Ramayana is believed to be the work of Rishi Valmiki. The Mahabharata was written by Rishi Ved Vyas. Buddhist sacred literature was Jataka Tales who deal with previous births of the Lord Buddha. The religious literature of the Jains was written in Ardha-Magadhi, a form of prakrit.

Secular Literature : This includes biographies, dramas, historical works and the accounts of foreign travellers. Arthashastra, written by Kautilya, provides useful information about the social and political conditions of the Mauryan age. Bababhata wrote Harschacharita. It deals with the life and times of the Harshavardhana.

The Sangam texts in Tamil are a valuable source of information about the life and culture of the Tamil people during the reign of the Pandya and the Chola kings.

Fa-Hsien visited India in the fifth century CE. **Hiuen-Tsang**, the famous Chinese pilgrim arrived in India in seventh century CE. They throw light on the political, economic and religious conditions of those times.

2. Earliest People

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The period of human history from around 500,000 BCE to 4,000 BCE, when humans used mainly stone tools, is known as the Stone Age.
2. The Stone Age is further divided into the Old Stone Age or the Paleolithic Age, the Middle Stone Age or the Mesolithic Age and the New Stone Age or the Neolithic Age.
3. In course of time, while rubbing two pieces of stone or wood together, man accidentally discovered how to light a fire.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. c. 3. c.

C. Cancel the wrong word :

- Ans.** 1. The Palaeolithic Age/Mesolithic Age was first of the three ages.
2. A wider use of microliths/megaliths was made during Mesolithic Age.
3. Mesolithic Age/Neolithic Age is known as the New Stone Age.
4. The control on fire/making tools was a turning point in human evolution.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The palaeolithic people moved from place to place in search of **food**.
2. The **Mesolithic** phase witnessed a number of environmental changes.
3. The early man worshipped the forces of **nature**.
4. The Neolithic or New Stone Age is also called **Neolithic Revolution**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. True.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The period of human history from around 500,000 BCE to 4,000 BCE, when humans used mainly stone tools, is known as the Stone Age. The Stone Age is further divided into the Old Stone Age or the Paleolithic Age, the Middle Stone Age or the Mesolithic Age and the New Stone Age or the Neolithic Age. The period of transition, or change, from the use of stone to the use of metals is known as the Copper-Stone Age or the Chalcolithic Age. Humans used both stone and metal during the Chalcolithic Age.
Different types of archaeological sources such as stone tools, fossils, etc. are the sources to study the life of that period.
2. Many tools have been found in France, England, China, India and Pakistan. In India stone tools have been found in many places except the Gangetic plains and Punjab.
3. Gradually, man learnt various uses of fire. Apart from driving away wild animals, it could keep him warm, light up dark and even roast meat.
4. The microliths were minute shaped flint struck on to handles of bone or wood to make tools like spears, saws, sickles and arrows.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The period of human history from around 500,000 BCE to 4,000 BCE, when humans used mainly stone tools, is known as the Stone Age. The Stone Age is further divided into the Old Stone Age or the Paleolithic Age, the Middle Stone Age or the Mesolithic Age and the New Stone Age or the Neolithic Age. The period of transition, or change, from the use of stone to the use of metals :

Palaeolithic Age : The Palaeolithic people were food gatherers and hunters. They moved from place to place in search of food. They used stone tools for hunting animals, chopping meat, cutting wood and digging roots and tubers.

Mesolithic Age : The period intervening as a transitional phase between the Palaeolithic Age and the Neolithic Age, is known as the Mesolithic Age. It extends from about 12,000 years ago to about 10,000 years ago. This phase witnessed a number of environmental changes.

Neolithic Age : People of Neolithic Age wandered from place to place in search of food, but in about 10,000 BCE, he could produce his own food and lead a settled life. The beginning of their new stage in the early man's life in known as the New Stone Age.

Different types of archaeological sources such as stone tools, fossels, etc. are the sources to study the life of that period.

2. Man had begun to live in small settlements near his fields. They made huts using the local material. The archaeologists have found many remains of these villages. Some of the important sites of the Neolithic Age are Mehrgarh (in present day Pakistan), Koldihwa (Uttar Pradesh) Mahagara (Uttar Pradesh), Gufkral and Burzahom (Kashmir), Chirand (Bihar), Hallur and Paiyampalli (Andhra Pradesh). At these places, the archaeologists have found evidences that the people grew rice, wheat, barley, lentils, green gram, black gram and millets etc. They domesticated animals like goats, sheep, cattle, pigs and dogs etc. The first animal to be tamed was dog. They could now get milk and meat from these domestic animals and use oxen to plough the fields.
3. **(i) Fire :** Man first saw fire when lightning struck trees. Although he feared fire, he learnt to use it to scare away wild animals. As he did not know how to make fire, he had to take turns with other members of his group to keep it burning continuously. In course of time, while rubbing two pieces of stone or wood together, man accidentally discovered how to light a fire. He could now have fire whenever he wanted. This was his first major discovery and victory over nature.
(ii) The wheel : The wheel was a remarkable invention of neolithic man. He might have got the idea while rolling logs of wood. Wheels improved transport and quickened the pace of development.
(iii) Agriculture : First the seeds had to be sowed. As the plants started to grow they had to be watered and protected from animals. Then the crops had to be harvested. The harvested crops needed to go through threshing, husking and grinding before they were fit to be cooked. Men and women participated in crop cultivation. Women played an important role especially when it came to threshing, husking and grinding.
(iv) The Use of Metals : The first metal discovered and used by early man was copper. In course of time man began to use bronze as alloy of copper and tin. Bronze was harder than copper and therefore it was more useful to make tools and weapons. The use of metals was a turning point in early man's life, so this age is also called 'Bronze Age'.

3. Advent of City Life in India

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. The term 'civilisation' means a highly advanced culture with towns and cities; crafts and trade; literature and organised form of government.
 2. Seals may have been used to stamp bags or packets containing goods that were sent from one place to another.
 3. A large number of playthings, like miniature carts, dice, marbles, maze, squirrels and a toy bullock whose head moves at the pull of a string, have been excavated.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. a. 2. b. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Tools** and **fertile** led to surplus production of foodgrains.
2. **Agriculture** was the chief occupation of the Harappan people.
3. Harappan people had trade relations with foreignlands.
4. The Indus Valley civilization collapsed by about **1500 BCE**.
5. The Indus Valley people traded with **Mesopotamia**.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. True.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The citadel was a raised post-found in the cities of the Indus valley civilisation. This are of city was built on top of a mound of bricks almost 12 metres high. A large staircase ran up the side of this mound.
2. No temples or any positive religious material has been discovered in Harappa and Mohenjodaro. However, some of the seals, sealings, figurines and stone images found in the ruins of the cities help in forming some idea about the religious beliefs and practices of the people. It is probable that they had developed a complex religion based on the worship of 'Mother Goddess' and animals. Further, a male God was also worshipped by the Indus Valley people. The figure is identified as God Shiva described as Maha Yogi and Pashupati.
3. Harappans had a well developed trade. They moved away from the villages which were the centres of agriculture and set up centres of trade and commerce which transformed into cities. Thus, areas which were centres of trade emerged as cities. The Indus valley people traded with foreign lands also such as, **Mesopotamia**. Lothal had trade links with other areas.
4. The Harappans were good craftsmen. There are many such examples :

Toy-Making and Sculpture-Making : A large number of playthings, like miniature carts, dice, marbles, maze, squirrels and a toy bullock whose head moves at the pull of a string, have been excavated.

Jewellery-Making : The jewellers of the Indus valley made a variety of ornaments using materials such as copper, gold, silver, clay, and precious stones. They also used faience, a material made by baking and glazing specially treated clay. Both, men and women wore ornaments such as bangles, necklaces and rings.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The most striking feature of the Indus Civilisation was the well-planned nature of its cities. Most of our knowledge of the Indus cities is based on excavations at Mohenjodaro and Harappa. Like most of the Indus cities, Mohenjodaro was a grid planned city, i.e., all the streets cut each other at right angles. It was divided into two parts. One part was at a higher level though small in size. It was built on a massive platform constructed of baked bricks. Archaeologists call this area the citadel or aeropolis.

2. It is difficult to say anything with certainty about the religious beliefs of the Indus Valley people. No temples or any positive religious material has been discovered in Harappa and Mohenjodaro. However, some of the seals, sealings, figurines and stone images found in the ruins of the cities help in forming some idea about the religious beliefs and practices of the people. It is probable that they had developed a complex religion based on the worship of 'Mother Goddess' and animals. Further, a male God was also worshipped by the Indus Valley people. The figure is identified as God Shiva described as Maha Yogi and Pashupati. The Indus valley people also worshipped animals like the bull, the tiger, the goat, the rhinoceros, the crocodile and the snake. The swastika and the wheel on some seals indicate the worship of Sun God. The Indus people even believed in life after death. They buried their dead, often in huge burial urns, along with food, ornaments and the articles used by them in daily life.
3. The Indus Valley Civilization lasted for about one thousand years. It collapsed by about 1500 BCE with the coming of the Aryans to India. The reasons for its fall are not fully known. The cities might have been destroyed by floods or there might have been an earthquake or deforestation. It is also possible that the cities were attacked and destroyed by the Aryans. Whatever may have been the reason, the sites in Sind and West Punjab were deserted and people must have moved elsewhere in the east and south. The fall of such a glorious culture was indeed a sad event in the history of India.

4. The Vedic Age

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. It was because the Vedas were composed during this period.
 2. Rig Veda, Sama Veda, Yajur Veda and Atharva Veda.
 3. Due to the use of iron ploughs and hoes, it became easier to plough the soil and increase agricultural production.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. c. 3. a. 4. c.

C. Correct the following statements :

- Ans.**
1. The Aryans first settled down around the region of Punjab.
 2. The Tribal chief was called rajan.
 3. Cattle was the most valued possession of the Aryans.
 4. The Brahmacharya Ashram was the first stage in life.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. **Four vedas** are the main sources of information of the Vedic age.
 2. The head of the family was called a **Grihapati**.
 3. The Aryans worshipped various forces of **nature**.
 4. **Gambling** was regarded as an evil.

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False.

F. Answer the following questions briefly :

- Ans.**
1. The Rigvedic Aryans enjoyed many sports like horse-racing, chariot racing and hunting. They also enjoyed the game of the dice. They liked gambling. However it was regarded as an evil. They played music instruments such as, the flute, veena and drum.
 2. Early Vedic people lived in villages which were composed of many families. The head of the family was called a 'Grihapati'. Their families were patriarchal, or we can say that the eldest male member used to be the head of the family.
 3. Our main source of information about the Aryans come from the four Vedas. They are the Rig Veda, Sama Veda, Yajur Veda and Atharva Veda. The four vedas give a lot of information about the Aryans and their religion, society and culture.
 4. In the Later Vedic Age, people began to worship new gods such as Brahma, the Creator; Vishnu, the Protector; and Shiva, the Destroyer. Rituals and sacrifices became very complex and were performed elaborately. Special occasions such as the birth of a child, marriage, etc., were celebrated with lavish ceremonies. Priests received gifts of gold, clothes, cows and horses.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. The end of the Vedic period, agriculture seems to have become the main source of livelihood of the people. This was facilitated by the use of iron weapons for clearing forests and for agricultural purposes. The use of iron technology truly revolutionised agriculture. Cattle was their most valued possession and chief form of wealth. There were frequent battles for cattle. The importance of cows can be judged from the fact that the word for battle came to be known as gavishthi, literally, 'a search for cows'.
 2. Agriculture became the main occupation of the people, because the land in the Ganga-Yamuna Doab and the middle Ganga Valley was very fertile. Rice and barley were the main crops. Due to the use of iron ploughs and hoes, it became easier to plough the soil and increase agricultural production. Iron was also used in making weapons and chariots.
 3. The Rigvedic Aryans enjoyed many sports like horse-racing, chariot racing and hunting. They also enjoyed the game of the dice. They liked gambling. However it was regarded as an evil. They played music instruments such as, the flute, veena and drum.
 4. **Social Life :**
 - (a) **Caste System :** The caste system became more rigid during the Later Vedic period. Moving from one Varna to another became difficult. The Varna system became more or less hereditary. It resulted into social evils such as, untouchability etc.
 - (b) **The four Ashrams :** These four well-defined parts or stages were the Brahmacharya Ashram, Grihastha Ashram, Vanaprastha Ashram and the Sanyasa Ashram.

Economic Life :

Agriculture became the main occupation of the people, because the land in the Ganga-Yamuna Doab and the middle Ganga Valley was very fertile. Rice and barley were the main crops. Due to the use of iron ploughs and hoes, it became easier to plough the soil and increase agricultural production. Iron was also used in making weapons and chariots.

Political Life :

The rajans was now a king who had a proper army and a kingdom. His prestige depended on the extent of the area he controlled. He adopted lofty titles like Samrat and Maharajadhiraja. In ashvamedha yagna, a horse belonging to the king went into neighbouring kingdoms. If it was stopped, a war ensued.

5. Early States and New Ideas

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Buddhist and Jain.
2. Ajatashatru and Chandragupta Maurya were the two important rulers of Magadha. Mahapadma Nanda founded the Nanda Dynasty.
3. Ajatashatru was the son of Bimbisara who was the first known ruler of Magadha.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. b. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. A strong consciousness of the pure land of the Aryans was called **Aryavarta**.
2. The farmers had to pay **1/6th** of their produce as tax.
3. The rules made for Buddhist Sangha were written down in **Vinaya Pitaka**.
4. **Hinayans** started worshipping Buddha as a God.
5. **Magadha** was an important Mahajanapada.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. False.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The growing use of iron ploughshares helped in producing more grain. Heavy and clayey soil could be turned over better with an iron ploughshare.
The practice of transplanting paddy came into existence. Under this system, saplings were grown and then planted into the fields in place of scattering seeds on the ground.
2. The kingdom was ruled by a king. The form of government was hereditary monarchy. The king was very powerful and important. He was just like a god, living in a large palace, with a number of officers and servants. He was the guardian of his people's life, society and religion.
3. The teachings of Buddha are based on his four Noble Truths. The First

Noble Truth is that, life is full of sorrow. The Second Noble Truth is that the cause of sorrow is desire, which can never be fulfilled. Buddha called it thirst or tanha. The Third Noble Truth is that, all sufferings can be removed by ending all desires. The Fourth Noble Truth is to, follow the eight fold path to remove all sufferings. The Eight Fold path suggested by Buddha is : (i) Right knowledge (ii) Right purpose (iii) Right speech (iv) Right action (v) Right living (vi) Right effort (vii) Right thinking and (viii) Right meditation.

4. While Magadha became a powerful kingdom, Vajji with its capital at Vaishali (Bihar) was under a different form of government known as 'gana' or 'sangha'.

In a 'gana' or 'sangha' there were many rulers and each one was known as 'raja'. These rajas performed rituals together. They met in assemblies and took decisions on important matters together. Women, dasis and karmakaras were not allowed to participate in these discussions.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Magadha had a very good supply of forest timber and elephants. It had control over the lands bordering the Ganga, and this gave it ready access to trade. Magadha controlled the important river port of Champa, which gave it great advantage in matters of trade and in times of war. Magadha also had abundant iron and copper deposits. Iron was needed to make weapons. It was also used to make agricultural tools like the plough. Magadha was located in the fertile Gangetic plain. This helped the growth of agriculture and made Magadha prosperous. All these factors worked to make Magadha more powerful than its rivals.

2. Similarities and differences between Buddhism and Jainism.

Similarities

- Both religions discouraged rituals and animal sacrifices.
- Both emphasized on compassion and tolerance towards other living beings, good thoughts and good behaviour.
- Both Buddha and Mahavira used the language of the common people to spread their teachings.

Differences

The idea of the Middle Path is a very important part of Buddhism, but it does not exist in Jainism.

3. The Sangha and Monasteries were famous result of influence of Jainism and Buddhism.

The Sangha : Both Mahavira and Buddha believed that true knowledge could be gained by only those, who leave their homes. Arrangements were made for them to stay together in the sanghas. It was like an association of those who left their homes.

Men and women joining the sangha led simple lives. Most of the time they meditated, and had to go to cities and villages to beg for food in hours that were fixed. They were known as bhikkhus (the Prakrit word for renouncer-beggar) and bhikkhunis.

Monasteries : Jain and Buddhist monks, wandered from place to place for the whole year, teaching people. They stayed at one place only

during the rainy season, as it was very difficult to travel. Their supporters at times built temporary shelters for them in gardens, or they stayed in natural caves in hilly areas.

6. The Mauryan Empire

Exercise

- Ans.** 1. Kautilya's *Arthashastra* and Megasthenese's account.
2. Megasthenese was a Greek ambassador. He stay in the court of Chandragupta Maurya.
3. Kalinga's war change the life of Ashoka because he was so horrified to see the bloodshed and destruction.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b. 3. a. 4. b.

C. Cancel the wrong word :

- Ans.** 1. The Mauryan/Shunga dynasty came to power after the fall of the Nandas.
2. Seleucus Nicator was the army commander of Chandragupta/Alexander.
3. Kalinga is the ancient name of modern coastal Odisha/Bengal.
4. Dhamma is a Pali/Sanskrit word.
5. The empire was divided into smaller/larger units.

D. Correct the underlined words :

- Ans.** 1. Alexander the Great invaded Indian in the Fourth Century BCE.
2. Selucus sent Megasthenese to the court of Chandragupta Maurya.
3. After the Kalinga war, Ashoka became a faithful and devoted Buddhist.
4. Ashoka sent Buddhist missions to various parts of India.
5. Sthanika was an officers in charge of the large districts.

E. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Alexander invaded India in the **fourth century** BCE.
2. A fierce battle took place between **Ashoka's army** and the army of **Kalinga**.
3. Ashoka spent his life spreading the message of **peace** and **non-violence**.
4. Ashoka died in **232 BCE**.
5. Ashoka sent his son **Mahendra** and daughter **Sanghamitra** to Sri Lanka.

F. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. True.

G. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Seleucus → a. *Arthashastra*
2. Megasthenese → b. Ashoka's Guru
3. Kautilya → c. Alexander
4. Upagupta → d. A religion
5. Buddhism → e. *Indika*

H. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Alexander the Great of Macedonia invaded north-western India in the fourth century BCE, when the Nandas were ruling over Magadha. He conquered some small kingdoms and reached the river Beas. He could not advance beyond the Beas because his tired soldiers were afraid to face the war elephants of the mighty Magadhan army. Alexander decided to return.
- Before leaving India, Alexander installed Greek governors in the conquered territories in north-western India. Alexander's invasion paved the way for the rise of the Mauryas.
2. Chandragupta, with the help of his guide Chanakya, overthrew the Nandas from Magadha and the Greeks from the north west frontier and Punjab and unified the large parts of India. His empire extended from the Hindukush in the west to Bengal in the east and from the Himalayas in the north to Mysore in the south.
3. Ashoka took several welfare measures for his subjects. Two of them were as follows.
- He planted trees on both the sides of the roads so that travellers and especially merchants can travel in comfort.
- He opened numerous hospitals in all the parts of his empire. These were opened not only for men but also for animals and birds.

I. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The first time in ancient India, a completely centralised administration prevailed in the Mauryan period.
- The king was the supreme authority. He issued what was known as dharma or laws. The king was assisted in the administration by a council of ministers-mantriparishad. Different officials were responsible for different jobs-collection of taxes from farmers, craftspeople and traders; maintaining law and order, etc. Each province was headed by a prince or a member of the royal family, known as kumara or arya Putra. The prince assisted by many officers. The sthanika was an officer in charge of the large districts while gopas were in charge of smaller districts. Officers like yuktas and rajukas had different responsibilities like the measurement of land, providing public utilities like roads and hospitals, collection of taxes, and maintenance of law and order. At the village level, the headman, called gramika, was in charge of the village. A very important role was played by the village elders called grama vridhdhas.
2. Ashoka joined the monastic order but did not renounce the world or his Kingship. He tried to set the house of Buddhists in order by making rules for monks and nuns. He devoted himself to the spread of Buddhism in India and abroad.
- He sent Buddhist missions to various parts of India. He sent his own son Mahendra and daughter Sanghamitra to Sri Lanka to propagate Buddhism. Also many stupas and viharas were built during his period to spread the message of Buddhism. It was during the reign of Ashoka that Buddhism became an important religion.

3. The Kalinga war proved to be a turning point in Ashoka's life. The people of Kalinga were brave and self-respecting. They didn't surrender themselves.

When Ashoka invaded Kalinga, a fierce battle took place between Ashoka's army and the army of Kalinga. He conquered Kalinga but he was so horrified to see the bloodshed and destruction, that he decided not to fight any more wars. About a lakh and a half people were captured and lakhs of people died including innocent men, women and children.

Ashoka's Dhamma

The Pali word Dhamma is derived from the Sanskrit word Dharma which means religious duty. Ashoka spent his life spreading the message of peace and non-violence. This message, based on moral principles is actually a code of conduct for the people to follow and is referred to as Ashoka's Dhamma.

Principles of Dhamma

The main principles of dhamma as defined by Ashoka are as follows:

Ahimsa or non-violence : Ashoka forbade the killing of all living beings.

Tolerance of all sects : People should love one another and accept and tolerate all religions. While honouring their own religion, people should not condemn that of others.

Obedience to parents and elders : Elders should be respected and children should be treated with understanding.

Generosity towards all : Honesty and kindness should be practised towards all, including servants.

4. A well-organised system of tax collection helped to collect revenue to carry out the administrative functions and for the maintenance of the army. While land revenue seems to be the main tax imposed, there is also a mention of water tax. Fines charged also added to the revenue.

7. Post Mauryan Age

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Bacterians and Parthians.
2. Kanishka was the greatest of the Kushana kings.
3. Asvaghosha.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. b. 4. c.

C. Encircle the right option :

- Ans.** 1. Many provinces were ruled by Kanishka's faithful governors called (Kshatrapas)/Satrapas.
2. The most famous Bactrian king was (Menander)/Kanishka.
3. Kanishka declared (Buddhism)/Jainism as the state religion.
4. (Rudradaman)/Gondopherenes was a great lover of Sanskrit.
5. (Gold)Silver coins for the first time in India were made by the Kushanas.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The Indo-Greeks were from **Northern Afghanistan**.
2. **Gondopherenes** was the most well-known Parthian ruler.
3. The Shakas introduced the **satrap** system of government.
4. **Rudradaman** was the most powerful Shaka ruler.
5. The two schools of Buddhism were **Hinayana** and **Mahayana**.

E. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Kanishka → a. A Buddhist sect
2. Menander → b. Kathiawar
3. Mahayana → c. Nagarjuna
4. Sudarshana lake → d. Kushana King
5. *Madhyamika Sutra* → e. Greek

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Indo-Greeks influenced Indian culture and society in many ways :
1. Astronomy : Indians improved their knowledge of astrology and astronomy with Greek contacts.
2. Medicine : The Greek or Yunani system of medicine was introduced by them. This system is still used in India.
3. Coins : The Indians learnt from them to use moulds to give their coins a definite shape.
4. Art and Sculpture : The Greek style greatly influenced the Indian sculpture.
2. The Parthians came from Central Asia and ruled over North-East India with Gandhara as their capital.
Gondopherenes was their important ruler. They were defeated by Kushanas.
3. In the northeast of China there lived a tribe called Yueh-chi. Kushanas were one of the five clans of the same. The rise of a nomadic tribe called Huns in 165 BCE forced them to move westwards towards Bactria where they displaced Sakas. Gradually, they moved to Kabul valley, captured Gandhara and ultimately set up their authority over the lower Indus Basin and the greater part of the Gangetic Basin. The Kushana Empire extended from the River Oxus to Varanasi in the Ganga Valley.
4. The silk route enabled traders, pilgrims, missionaries, soldiers and urban people from countries like ancient China and India, Tibet, Persia and Mediterranean countries to establish close contacts with each other.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. After the Indo-Greeks, the Shakas established their rule over different parts of India. There were five branches of the Shakas, of which the branch that consolidated its power and ruled over a large territory was the one that ruled over western India. The Shakas introduced the satrap system of government. The empire was divided into numerous provinces or satrapies, each under a satrap.
They established many kingdoms of which the most important were those of Taxila, Mathura, Nasik and Ujjain.
2. Kanishka repaired the old Viharas and constructed the new ones at Taxila, Kashmir and Mathura. He gave lots of money in charity to

Buddhist monks for their livelihood. Kanishka is credited to have convened the fourth Buddhist Council in Kashmir in which a large number of Buddhist scholars like Vasumitra, Charaka and Nagarjuna took part. The scholars were able to put together a number of original commentaries of Buddhist text. The compilations that was produced was called Mahavibhasa. He constructed many stupas and sent missionaries to foreign lands such as China, Japan, Tibet and Central Asia. The statues of Mahatma Buddha were installed through the length and breadth of the country. Necessary changes and amendments were carried out in Buddhism in order to make it timely and popular. Consequently, Buddhism was split into two schools— the Hinayana and the Mahayana.

3. Kanishka was a liberal patron of art and literature. There were scholars, philosophers, poets, musicians and playwrights in his court. Four names are the most outstanding of this age. They are Asvaghosha, Vasumitra, Nagarjuna and Charaka. Buddha Charita and Sutralankaras are the two great books of Asvaghosha. Vasumitra compiled the encyclopedia on Buddhism, called Mahavibhasa Shastra. Nagarjuna's work, Madhyamika Sutra, is a classical work on philosophy. Charaka, the author of the world famous Charaka Samhita, was the court physician of Kanishka.

Kanishka engaged a number of artists to make images of Lord Buddha. In it, the Greek style was applied to Indian subject, i.e., the Buddha. This gave to the Gandhara School of Art which flourished a great deal under Kanishka's patronage. Its chief centres were Peshawar and Taxila. It is also called the Indo-Greek or Graeco-Buddhist art, because the Greek style of art was applied to the Buddhist subject. Besides, another school of art, the Mathura School of Art, also developed under Kanishka. The important feature of the Mathura School of Art was that all figures were carved on spotted red sandstone. A headless statue of Kanishka has been found at Mathura. It is a remarkable piece of work from the Mathura School of Art.

4. Trade through the Silk Route was mainly controlled by the Kushana kings. The Silk Route originally derived its name, from the lucrative Chinese silk trade, which started during the reign of the Han dynasty (206 BCE-220 CE). The route enabled traders, pilgrims, missionaries, soldiers and urban people from countries like ancient China and India, Tibet, Persia and Mediterranean countries to establish close contacts with each other.

8. Kingdoms of the Deccan and South India (200 BCE-300 CE)

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. The greatest of the Satavahana rulers was Gautamiputra Sri Satakarni.
 2. One prominent king of the Pandya dynasty was Neduchezhyan. The capital of Pandyas was Madurai.

3. The literature collectively produced by the ancient Tamilian poets is commonly known as the Sangam literature.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. c. 4. a.

C. Correct the underlined words :

- Ans.** 1. The Satavahana rulers were known as the Lords of the Dakshinapatha.
2. The Satavahana rulers patronised Buddhism.
3. The Chola kingdom was located between the Pannar and the Velar rivers.
4. The Pandyas controlled the region around Madurai.
5. Arikamedu was a very important centre of trade with Rome.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Satakarni was succeeded by his son **Pulumavi**.
2. Karikala occupied the most significant place.
3. The three chiefs are mentioned as **Muvendar** in the Sangam literature.
4. **Charan Senguttuvan** was a famous Chera ruler.
5. The literature collectively produced by the ancient Tamilian poets is known as the **Sangam literature**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. False.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. Kingdoms of the South

The three main kingdoms, the Cholas, the Pandyas and Cheras arose in the southern part of India, beyond the Deccan. Our detailed knowledge about these kingdoms is based on Sangam Literature.

2. Sangam Literature

The literature collectively produced by the ancient Tamilian poets is commonly known as the Sangam literature. It is believed that three 'Sangams' or 'Assemblies' of Tamil poets were held in which 8,598 poets participated. From the historical events described in these poems, historians have tried to suggest that the Sangam literature was compiled between 300 CE to 600 CE. Some of the poems were composed in the early centuries of the Christian era though the compositions went on being compiled till the sixth century CE.

3. The Chola kingdom was located between the Pannar and the Velar rivers. It was popularly known as Cholamandalam. The Cholas claimed solar origin and their emblem was the tiger (puli). In the beginning, Uraiyur in Tiruchirapalli was its capital. Later, it was transferred to Puhar (Kaveripattanam).
4. The south Indian people worshipped some Vedic gods. Murugan known as Kartikeya in north India was the most popular God. Buddhism and Jainism were also practised. They also worshipped their dead heroes who died in the battle fields. Monuments were built in their memories called Virakkalas. Most people worshipped local gods and goddesses and also believed in life after death.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. In about 1st century CE, the Satavahana Dynasty was founded in the upper Godavari Valley in the Deccan (now Maharashtra). The Satavahanas acted as the governors of Mauryans in the Deccan, but with the decline of Mauryans they emerged as claimants to the political power in the Deccan. The greatest of the Satavahana rulers was Gautamiputra Sri Satakarni who extended his control over Karantaka and Andhra for some time. We know about him from an inscription composed by his mother Gautami Balashri. He and other Satavahana rulers were known as the Lords of the Dakshinapatha.

The capital of the Satavahanas was Prathisthanapura in Maharashtra. In the Deccan, the Satavahanas rose to power under Simuka during the post-Mauryan period and established a huge kingdom including Amaravati (Andhra Pradesh), Junna (Pune) and Paithan (Maharashtra).

2. The three main kingdoms, the Cholas, the Pandyas and the Cheras arose in the southern part of India, beyond the Deccan. Our detailed knowledge about these kingdoms is based on Sangam Literature. Thousands of poems written in Tamil were collected and compiled in the Sangam Literature. The various poems in the Sangam Literature indicate that the rulers of these kingdoms often fought with each other. The three rulers (chiefs) are mentioned as *muvendar* in the Sangam Literature.

The Cholas : The Chola kingdom was located between the Pannar and the Velar rivers. It was popularly known as Cholamandalam.

The Pandyas : The Pandyas controlled the region around Madurai. According to the *Indika* of Megasthenes, the Pandyan kingdom was founded by a woman who maintained a large army. One of the Pandyan rulers was Nedunchezhyan.

The Cheras : The Cheras also known as Keralaputras occupied the region consisting parts of Tamil Nadu and Kerala. The capital of this kingdom was Vanji. Charan Senguttuvan was the famous Chera ruler.

3. The ancient fishing settlement of Arikamendu, situated south of (Pondicherry) Puducherry, emerged as an important port city under the Cholas, a powerful South Indian dynasty. Our knowledge about Arikamendu is derived mainly from archaeological remains and from references in Sangam literature.

Arikamendu was a very important centre of trade with Rome. Some Roman traders seem to have settled in Arikamendu, in a separate part of the city. Fine textiles from the Chola kingdom were an important item of export in addition to beads, semi-precious stones, shell bangles and glass. Roman gold, silver, gems, lamps, glassware, wine, garum (a fish sauce) and olive oil were imported. Wine and olive oil were transported to Indian in double-handled jars (amphorae).

9. The Imperial Guptas

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The Gupta sculpture shows an exquisite beauty of execution and a high degree of skill.

2. King Skandgupta.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. c. 2. b. 3. b. 4. a.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The period between **320 CE** and **540 CE** is known as Gupta Age.
2. Chandragupta was a great patron of **art** and **literature**.
3. Fa-Hsien visited India during the reign of **Chandragupta II**.
4. The Gupta period is renowned for advancement in **art**.
5. The continuous invasions of the **Huns** made the Gupta empire weak.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. True.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. Clear evidences and historical sources have been found for knowing about the Guptas. These include archaeological and literary sources.

Archaeological

Archaeological sources of Guptas include the rock-cut temples of Ajanta and brick temples of Ajanta and brick temples in Devgarh, Kanpur and Jhansi. City remains found in Pataliputra and the Prayag Prashasti or pillar inscription at Allahabad about Samudragupta by his court poet Harisena, are rich sources of Gupta Heritage.

Coins and Literary Sources

Coins of Gupta Age, made of gold and silver, have been found with images of gods and goddesses or kings like Samudragupta. Further, the accounts of travellers like Fa-Hsien help in enriching us about the Gupta Age.

2. Samudragupta was one of the greatest conquerors in Indian history. In his lifetime, he had conquered about twenty kingdoms. His rule extended from the Himalayas to the river Narmada in the south and from the Brahmaputra in the east to the Yamuna in the north.

The eulogy of Samudragupta, written by his court poet Harishena, is inscribed on an Ashokan pillar at Allahabad.

This eulogy gives us details of his conquests, such as :

He annexed the kingdoms of the Western Gangetic Plain.

The kings of Kamrupa (Assam) Bengal and Punjab were forced to pay homage.

In the Deccan, he extended his power as far as Kanchipuram (modern Chennai). He did not annex the empires of the kings of South India but demand that they pay him an annual tribute.

3. Great progress was made in the various fields of science during this period, especially astronomy, astrology and mathematics. Two famous astronomers and mathematicians of ancient India were Aryabhatta and Varahamihira. Aryabhatta discovered that the Earth moves on its axis and round the Sun. He also wrote in detail about the solar and lunar eclipses.
4. The successors of Chandragupta II had to face repeated invasions by the Huns from Central Asia in the second half of the fifth century CE.

Initially the Gupta king Skandagupta took effective steps to stem the march of the Huns to India; however, his successors proved to be weak and were unable to stop the Hun invaders. The Huns were good horsemen and possibly used metal stirrups. They were also excellent archers. These enabled the Huns to succeed. The Gupta Empire was further undermined by the rise of the feudatories. This hastened the disintegrations of the Gupta Empire and within the next half a century it gave away to a number of smaller kingdoms.

D. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The Gupta Age has been called 'the Golden Age' because of various achievements in the field of art, architecture, time scholarship and great development in science.

Administration : The Gupta administration can be called an ideal one. It was very mild and liberal. The king accepted the most important position. He ruled the empire with the assistance of ministers and other officials. The whole empire was divided into provinces. The provinces were known as bhukti and each bhukti was governed by an Uparika Maharaja. Bhuktis were further divided into districts which were controlled by Vishayapatis.

Economic Condition : Agriculture was the main occupation of the people. The crops of wheat, rice, barley, pulses, vegetables, cotton and sugar cane were grown. Agriculture was flourishing because of fertile land and irrigation facilities. The major part of the revenue came from agriculture. There were other occupations of the people that lived in villages. They produced various craft-goods of domestic use such as, earthen pots, furniture, basket, metal tools etc., and a variety of luxurious items including jewellery made of gold, precious stones, articles made of ivory, fine cloth of cotton and silk.

Art and Architecture : In sculpture, India made great progress under the Guptas. The Gupta sculpture shows an exquisite beauty of execution and a high degree of skill. The discovery of a large number of images and sculptures at Sarnath and various other places shows that, while depicting scenes from the Buddha's life, new subjects from Puranic mythology had also begun to be treated with remarkable freshness.

Science : Great progress was made in the various fields of science during this period, especially astronomy, astrology and mathematics. Two famous astronomers and mathematicians of ancient India were Aryabhatta and Varahamihira. Aryabhatta discovered that the Earth moves on its axis and round the Sun. He also wrote in detail about the solar and lunar eclipses.

2. **Administration :** The Gupta administration can be called an ideal one. It was very mild and liberal. The king accepted the most important position. He ruled the empire with the assistance of ministers and other officials. The whole empire was divided into provinces. The provinces were known as bhukti and each bhukti was governed by an Uparika Maharaja. Bhuktis were further divided into districts which were controlled by Vishayapatis.

Society : People lived a happy, comfortable and a prosperous life. It is said in Fa-Hsien's accounts that people lived in villages and led a simple and honest life. But, there was a serious flow- the bad and inhuman treatment of the Chandalas or untouchables. They were made to live outside the city and even their shadows were regarded as capable of polluting, the other people.

3. **Science and Technology** : Great progress was made in the various fields of science during this period, especially astronomy, astrology and mathematics. Two famous astronomers and mathematicians of ancient India were Aryabhatta and Varahamihira. Aryabhatta discovered that the Earth moves on its axis and round the Sun. He also wrote in detail about the solar and lunar eclipses.

During this period, Indian mathematicians invented the concept of Zero and the Decimal System of numerals. The concept of zero and the decimal system of numerals was adopted by the Arabs and they spread it to other parts of the world.

Art and architecture : In sculpture, India made great progress under the Guptas. The Gupta sculpture shows an exquisite beauty of execution and a high degree of skill. The discovery of a large number of images and sculptures at Sarnath and various other places shows that, while depicting scenes from the Buddha's life, new subjects from Puranic mythology had also begun to be treated with remarkable freshness.

10. The Era of Harshavardhana

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The first ruler of Vardhana dynasty was Prabhakarvardhana.
2. Hiuen Tsang was a Chinese pilgrim.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Thaneshwar** was the capital of the Vardhana dynasty.
2. Harshavardhana ascended the throne in **606** CE.
3. The incharge of provinces were known as **Kumaramatyas**.
4. The source of income was **tax** on land.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Narmada became the southern limit of his empire which included Eastern Punjab, the whole of Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Bengal, Odisha, and parts of Sindh and Kashmir.
2. Chinese pilgrim Hieuen Tsang, who visited India in the 7th century CE and stayed in the country for about 15 years.
3. According to Hieuen Tsang, agriculture was the main occupation of the people. Trade thrived. There were many trading centres along the

Ganga, which was used as an internal waterway to transport goods.

4. The source of income was tax on land. One-fourth of the income was spent on government, one-fourth on public services, one-fourth to reward the scholars and one-fourth to help the holymen.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. Learning and education was given royal patronage during Harsha's period. Harsha himself was a great author. He wrote three plays in Sanskrit—Ratnavali, Priyadarshika, and Nagananda. He had many great scholars such as Banabhatta, Subandhu and Dandin in his court. He gave a special grant to the Nalanda University that had more than ten thousand students. He had donated a hundred villages to this university.
 2. The people wore untailed garments and walked bare-foot. The food was simple and pure. The rich lived in big houses made of bricks while the poor lived in thatched houses made of mud. There was a high sense of cleanliness and the people were honest and fair. The caste system had become quite rigid. The custom of Sati was practised but there was no purdah system.

11. The Chalukyas and the Pallavas

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. The Chalukyas ruled over large parts of the Deccan from the 6th to the 8th century CE.
 2. Ravikriti was the court poet of Pulakesin II.
 3. Narasimha Varman I.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. c.

C. Correct the following statements :

- Ans.**
1. The Chalukyas ruled over the Karnataka area of the Deccan.
 2. The Chalukya rule came to an end in 1753 CE.
 3. The Chalukyas were tolerant towards other religions.
 4. All the Pallava kings believed in Hinduism.
 5. The temples were not only the places of worship.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. **Badami or Vatapi** the capital of the Chalukyas.
 2. The **Narmada** river was the northern limit of the Chalukya kingdom.
 3. **Kanchipuram** was the main area of dominance of the Pallavas.
 4. The Pallavas gave patronage to the **temple** architecture.
 5. The people followed **buddhism** or **Hinduism**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. The Chalukyas ruled over large parts of the Deccan from the 6th to the 8th century CE. Their capital was at Badami or Vatapi. The most famous ruler of this dynasty was Pulakesin II (609 CE-642 CE). Under him the Chalukyan kingdom stretched from the Narmada to Kaveri, covering most of present-day Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.

Pulakesin II defeated Harsha at the banks of the Narmada in a historic battle. The Chalukyas were engaged in several battles with the Pallavas. Pulakesin II defeated the Pallava king Mahendravarman. However, Mahendravarman's son, Narasimhavarman, defeated Pulakesin II and captured Badami.

Vivid accounts of Pulakesin's campaigns are provided in the Aihole inscription composed by his court poet Ravikirti in 634 CE.

2. Pulakesin II defeated Harsha at the banks of the Narmada in a historic battle. The Chalukyas were engaged in several battles with the Pallavas. Pulakesin II defeated the Pallava king Mahendravarman. However, Mahendravarman's son, Narasimhavarman, defeated Pulakesin II and captured Badami.

Vivid accounts of Pulakesin's campaigns are provided in the Aihole inscription composed by his court poet Ravikirti in 634 CE.

The Chalukyas were finally defeated by the Rashtrakutas in 753 CE.

3. The people were followers of Vishnu and Shiva. The followers of Vishnu were called Alvars and the followers of Shiva were called Nayanars. The Tamil saints used to compose and sing hymns in praise of Vishnu and Shiva. Gradually Bhakti began to dominate the religious life of the people. Besides Hinduism some people also followed Buddhism and Jainism, Mahendravarman himself was a Jain.
4. After the death of Narasimhavarman, the Pallava kingdom began to decline. His successors were weak. They were not able to defend their aggression of their powerful neighbours, the Chalukyas and the Rashtrakutas. The Pallava kingdom came to an end in 895 CE, when its last ruler was defeated by the Chalukyas and Kanchi was occupied by them.
5. The temples of this period were not places of worship only. Actually they were the centres of the cultural, social and economic activities also. All social ceremonies were performed in the temples. They were also the centres of education. The village Mahasabha also held its meetings in the temples.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The Chalukyas construction many temples in honour of Shiva and Vishnu. The worship of Shiva and Vishnu became popular. A cave temple of Vishnu has been found in Badami. They also built grand temples at Aihole and Pattadakal.

The Pallavas were instrumental in the transition from rock-cut architecture to stone temples. A number of rock cut cave temples bear the inscription of the Pallava king, Mahendravarman I and his successors. The most of famous of these are the Seven Rath Temples at Mahabalipuram which was built by Narasimhavarman I. These temples are shaped like chariots or rath. So they are called Rath Temples.

2. The Chalukyas and the Pallavas mainly worshipped Shiva and Vishnu, they were tolerant towards other religions. Pulakeshin encouraged many Jain scholars in his court.

The people were followers of Vishnu and Shiva. The followers of Vishnu were called Alvars and the followers of Shiva were called Nayanars. The Tamil saints used to compose and sing hymns in praise of Vishnu and Shiva. Gradually Bhakti began to dominate the religious life of the people. Besides Hinduism some people also followed Buddhism and Jainism, Mahendrarvarman himself was a Jain.

12. Culture and Science of Ancient India

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Mahabharata and Ramayana.
2. Charaka was specialised in ayurveda (the Vedic science of medicine) and he wrote Charaka Samhita.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b. 3. b. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Shilappadigam** and **Manimegalai** are the two epics of the Tamil literature.
2. **Manimagalai** was named after its heroine, the daughter of Kovalan and Madhavi.
3. The **lion capital at Sarnath** is India's national emblem today.
4. The science of **astronomy** owes its development both to the Greeks and the Indians.
5. The Mathura school of Art preferred to use **red sandstone**.

D. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The Rig Veda, the earliest literary work was composed during the Early Vedic period. The Sama Veda, Yajur Veda and the Atharva Veda were composed later. The hymns, known as the shlokas, were composed by sages after receiving divine inspiration.
2. Relics or remains of Buddha (and those of other respected monks) were placed in sealed caskets and kept in small chambers. Over these chambers, hemispherical domes were built. These domes are called stupas.
3. Science in India made significant progress during the ancient period. Charaka and Sushruta made great contributions in the sphere of medicine. Charaka, who specialised in ayurveda (the Vedic science of medicine), wrote Charaka Samhita. Contact with the Greeks led to improvements in astronomy as well.
4. In the field of Technology also, the Indians made much progress. It was the Indians who, for the first time discovered the art of manufacturing steel. The craftsmanship of the Iron Pillar of Mehrauli, built during the Gupta period, is unmatched. India's contribution in the field of Chemistry is also praiseworthy. They invented lasting dyes and the blue colour.

They made different kinds of coins of gold and silver which led to the promotion of commerce and trade, particularly with the Roman Empire.

Indian goldsmiths made some rare specimens of jewellery of gold, silver and other precious stones which were in great demand in foreign countries.

Indian craftsmen could make best quality cotton, woollen and silk cloth, and that too with different designs. Such things were in great demand.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Shilappadigaram tells the story of Kovalan, a merchant prince of Puhar, and his devoted wife Kannagi. Kovalan neglected his wife and spent all his wealth on a dancer named Madhavi. He, however, returned to his wife after a quarrel with Madhavi, and they migrated to Madurai. Here, Kovalan tried to raise money by selling one of his wife's jewelled anklets to a goldsmith. The goldsmith falsely accused Kovalan of having stolen the queen's anklet. Kovalan was immediately executed on the king's orders. Kannagi proved Kovalan's innocence by showing her other anklet to the king, who realised his mistake and died of a broken heart. Kannagi, overcome with grief and anger, avenged her husband's death by burning down the city of Madurai.
2. In mathematics, Indians made three significant contributions: the notation system, the decimal system and the use of zero. The first recording of decimal numbers can be traced to Indian mathematics. Other notable contributions have been in trigonometry. It is generally accepted that sine and cosine developed here.
- In the second century BCE Apastamba produced a practical geometry for the construction of altars at which the kings could offer sacrifice. Aryabhata formulated the method for calculating the area of a triangle which led to the origin of trigonometry.

1. Understanding Diversity

SOCIAL AND POLITICAL LIFE

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Diverse children can become friends by choice of films, sports etc.
2. Social Diversity, Geographical Diversity, Linguistic Diversity, Diversity in Caste, Religion and Ways of Prayer, Economic Diversity.
3. Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru coined the phrase 'Unity in Diversity' to describe the country.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. c.

C. Cancel the wrong option :

- Ans.** 1. The North-western/South-eastern part of Rajasthan is termed as Marwar.
2. Kerala is known all over the world for its tea/spices.
3. No two persons on this planet are alike/different.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The state of being different is called **diversity**.
2. We use different **language** to communicate with others.

3. India is a country divided by **social** differences.
4. India's diversity has always been recognized as a source of its **strength**.
5. Kerala is surrounded by the **sea on one side** and **hills on the other**.

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. False 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. False.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. In the sphere of religion also a great variety is found in India. Hinduism, Jainism, Sikhism, Christianity, Islam, Buddhism, Zoroastrianism, etc., are followed by different sections of the Indian population. Their way of prayer is quite different from each other. The Hindus worship their Gods and Goddesses and offer their prayers to them in a temple. A Muslim offers Namaz in a Mosque while a Sikh sings hymns from the Guru Granth Sahib in a Gurdwara. All are doing the same thing, i.e., offering prayers to God in their own way.
2. Another example of the social difference that exists in India, is the family system that we practise. Many of us live in large families consisting of grandparents, aunts, uncles and cousins. This is the joint family system. Some of us live only with our parents and siblings. This is known as a nuclear family. Individuals choose to be in either of these according to their preference or family situation.
3. In the south-west corner of India shelter by the Western Ghats is a state named Kerala. It is surrounded by the sea on one side and hills on the other. On the hills, a number of spices like black pepper, cloves and cardamoms are cultivated. This small place came on the world trademap because of these spices.

D. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Our country India consists of people who are extremely diverse in many respects. These are differences in the physical features, social life, economic condition, religion, language, dress, food habits, etc. The thread which ties all these diverse beads together is the fact that we are all Indians.

Social Diversity

India is a country divided by social differences. The caste system, which has existed in India for almost 2000 years, has created several unequal divisions in society. There are hundreds of castes and sub-castes in India today. People are identified according to the caste to which they belong. People belonging to some sections of society continue to be treated badly in many parts of India even today.

Another example of the social difference that exists in India, is the family system that we practice. Many of us live in large families consisting of grandparents, aunts, uncles and cousins. This is the joint family system. Some of us live only with our parents and siblings. This is known as a nuclear family. Individuals choose to be in either of these according to their preference or family situation.

2. Rajasthan lies in the north-west of India and is the largest state of our country. The Aravalli mountain range divides the state into two regions- the north-western part called Marwar is sandy and is part of the Thar

Desert. The south-eastern area is called Mewar and has fertile lands and hilly tracts. The main crops grown here are jowar, bajra, maize, oilseeds, wheat, etc. The western part is dry and arid, scarce in water. The camel is the most important livestock reared here and the world's largest camel fair is held at Pushkar.

In the south-west corner of India shelter by the Western Ghats is a state named Kerala. It is surrounded by the sea on one side and hills on the other. On the hills, a number of spices like black pepper, cloves and cardamoms are cultivated. This small place came on the world trademap because of these spices. It attracted people from far and wide—the Romans, the Jews and the Arabs were the first to come here.

2. Diversity and Discrimination

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. Prejudice means a negative judgment or opinion formed about a subject or group without knowledge of the facts.
 2. Discrimination happens by stopping them from living in certain areas of your neighbourhood.
 3. Stereotype is one of the serious problem caused by prejudice.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. b. 3. c.

C. How would you distinguish between stereotypes and prejudice? The following statements are either stereotypes or prejudice. Mark S for stereotype and P for prejudice :

- Ans.**
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Women are not good drivers. | S |
| 2. City people are cunning. | P |
| 3. Girls are always emotional. | S |
| 4. Boys speak loudly. | S |
| 5. People in the villages are unaware of modern methods of farming. | P |
| 6. Most of the Indians live in villages. | P |

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. **Prejudice** is the process of prejudging something.
 2. Prejudice is **harmful** as it hurts the feelings of others.
 3. **Stereotypes** are not true because they fit large numbers of people into a single image.
 4. India's caste system developed due to discrimination based on the diversity of occupation.
 5. **Dr. B.R. Ambedkar** led a movement against the untouchability.

E. Answer the followig questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. Prejudice is, as the name implies, the process of prejudging something. It means a negative judgment or opinion formed about a subject or group without knowledge of the facts. Prejudices emerge out of stereotypes when we judge other people through preconceived notions about them.

There are a number of things about which we can be prejudiced about. For example, we could be prejudiced about the economic status of a person, region to which a person belongs, mentally ill people, etc. Even today, in many countries across the world, women are not treated as equal to men in their professional fields, or even at home.

2. Discrimination happens when people act on their prejudices and stereotypes. It can happen in various forms:
 - By doing such actions which put other people down.
 - By stopping them from living in certain areas of your neighbourhood.
 - By stopping them from taking part in your social or religious functions.
 - By preventing them to eat in the same restaurants and using the same cups, glasses or plates.
3. The Indian society has been divided into different castes on the basis of occupation. Brahmins (priests), Kshatriyas (rulers and warriors), and Vaishyas (traders) were considered to be upper castes, and therefore, respectable, while Shudras or the lower castes faced tremendous discrimination. People engaged in menial work, such as sweepers and cobblers, were, in fact, considered to be 'untouchable'.
4. People engaged in menial work, such as sweeper and cobblers, were, in fact, called untouchable. They were not allowed to interact with people belonging to the higher castes and were denied all rights.
5. The makers of our Constitution showed their respect for the element of diversity in our society by ensuring that the people have the freedom to follow any religion of their choice. The Fundamental Rights uphold the principles of freedom and equality. Every citizen of India, irrespective of caste, creed, race and religion, has the right to enjoy these rights. They are :
 - Right to Equality
 - Right to Freedom
 - Right against Exploitation
 - Right to Freedom of Religion
 - Cultural and Educational Rights
 - Right to Education
 - Right to Constitutional Remedies

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The struggle for freedom from the British rule also saw people protesting against the discriminations in the society. Enlightened leaders wanted to free the society from evil practices like untouchability. Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar, Shri Naryana Guru, and Dr B.R. Ambedkar were some of the social reformers who tried to break away from the caste system. Dr. Ambedkar, who himself was a victim of prejudice and discrimination fought for the rights of the dalits (untouchables) and led a movement against untouchability. Hence, as per the provisions of the Constitution, the government must treat every individual equally. In spite of certain inequalities that exist in our society, the government and the people are striving to realise the ideals of equality and justice for all, as enshrined in our Constitution.

2. **Prejudice** : Prejudice is, as the name implies, the process of prejudging something. It means a negative judgment or opinion formed about a subject or group without knowledge of the facts. Prejudices emerge out of stereotypes when we judge other people through preconceived notions about them.

There are a number of things about which we can be prejudiced about. For example, we could be prejudiced about the economic status of a person, region to which a person belongs, mentally ill people, etc.

Discrimination : Discrimination happens when people act on their prejudices and stereotypes. It can happen in various forms :

- By doing such actions which put other people down.
- By stopping them from living in certain areas of your neighbourhood.
- By stopping them from taking part in your social or religious functions.
- By preventing them to eat in the same restaurants and using the same cups, glasses or plates.

3.The Government

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. We need a government to run our country. The government is a body or agency which is needed to make decisions for the country.
2. Kaveri River.
3. In representative democracy, people elect their representative through a system called Universal Adult Franchise.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. a. 3. a.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The **government** is a body or agency which is needed to make decisions for the country.
2. The local level of the government means government at the village or town level.
3. Laws ensure **discipline** and **harmony** in the society.
4. Power in a dictatorship is often obtained by **force**.
5. Kaveri water dispute is between the states of **Tamil Nadu** and **Karnataka**.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The government in our country works at three different levels:
- The lowest level is the local government in a village or a town.
 - The government at the state level is called the State Government.
 - At the national level is the Central Government.
- Government, at these levels, caters to different kinds of people and takes different kinds of decisions. The local government in village or city deals with local problems faced by people. At state level, the

government deals with matters which are of importance to the entire state, e.g. education. The central government generally deals with issues of national importance, such as national security.

2. Suppose the government needs to build a new airport. The place where they decide to locate the airport is agricultural land where several farmers have their fields. In a democratic government, where decisions are made collectively after debate and consultation, the representatives of the farmers would try to make the government see the impact such a decision would have on the farmers. The government may then have to reconsider its decision.

This is the benefit of collective decision-making through participation. A government which includes representatives from every group of society is called a representative democracy.

3. In a dictatorship, all the power rests in the hands of one person or a small group of people. Such power is often obtained by force. People who challenge a dictator are punished severely and the government rarely gives freedom to the people. Pakistan has for long periods in the past had this form of government.
4. There can be disputes between different states on the matter of their boundaries or sharing water of a river which passes through more than one state. It is the duty of the central government to settle such disputes, so that people don't resort to violence. There has been a dispute between Karnataka and Tamil Nadu on sharing the water of Kaveri river. The water stored in Krishnasagar dam in Karnataka is used for irrigation in a number of districts and for meeting the needs of the city of Bengaluru while the water stored in Mettur Dam in Tamil Nadu is used for irrigation in the delta region of the state. A conflict arose because both dams are on the same river.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. The government has to make laws which cover all the areas of governance, like laws to check criminal activities, for road safety, for construction of houses, etc. It expects people to follow the rules and laws promulgated by it. But also has its own ways to check and implement these laws to ensure that people adhere to these laws of the land. For this, the government has the police, paramilitary and security forces. In case of the law being broken or violated or some injustice has the powers to pass the judgement. The courts are places where the citizen can appeal and the court would then decide what is to be done.
 2. The most common form of government found in many countries these days is the democratic form of government. In a democratic government the real power lies with the people. The people elect their representatives to run the government. These days democratic governments are usually referred to as representative democracies. In representative democracy, people elect their representative through a system called Universal Adult Franchise. It means that all adult citizens above a certain age in the country are allowed to vote to elect their representatives.

3. The government needs to uphold the key ideas of justice and equality. The decisions should not be biased and should be made on the basis that no one is more equal than the other. In addition to this, the government also ensures equality and justice to the people of India at every level. Justice and equality are inseparable ideas. Without justice to all, there can be no equality between them; and if there is no equality between people, justice is being denied to them. The abolition of untouchability, the biggest social, evil and women suffrage are some of the measures that the government has implemented to uphold the values set by our Constitution. In addition to this, the government also works towards protecting the rights of the girl child and addresses other such social issues which might create a conflict in society.
4. The right to vote was given to women in many countries of the world until the beginning of twentieth century. It was during the First World War that a woman's suffrage movement was launched. By suffrage means the right to vote in political elections. The women who campaigned for this right are known as suffragettes. The suffragettes organised themselves into a movement and began demanding the right to vote not only for themselves but also for other women. They held rallies and to demonstrate their determination of achieving the right to vote, they chained themselves to railings in public places. Even in an advanced country like the United States, women did not have the right to vote. They got it only in 1920, while women in Britain got the right to vote in 1928. In India, this right to vote was given to women along with men soon after independence.

4. Panchayati Raj and Rural Administration

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. The general body of the Panchayat at the village level is called the Gram Sabha.
 2. A Patwari or Lekhpal or Kanungo or Karamchari is the person who deals with the main work of measuring land and maintaining the land records belonging to different villages.
 3. The Nyaya Panchayat can hear only such petty cases as the trespass, minor theft, minor disputes between the village people and their cases of simple nature whether civil or criminal.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. Earlier, Panchayats used to look after the administration of **villages**.
 2. The lowest institution of the Panchayat Raj system in India is the **Gram Panchayat**.
 3. The BDO is appointed by the **state** government.
 4. A **Secretary** and **Gram Sevak** assist the Gram Panchayat in its functioning.

5. The **patwari** keeps the records of births and deaths in a village.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. False 5. True.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. The 73rd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1992 accorded the constitutional status to the Panchayati Raj institutions. The Act established a 3-tier system of Panchayati Raj for all states.

At the rural level, the form of local self-government is a three-tier Panchayati raj system :

- Gram panchayat at the village level
- Block samitis at the block level
- Zila parishads at the district level

2. If any farmer has any problem regarding his land, he can approach the gram panchayat and officially register a complaint. The legal course of action can be followed up by making a complaint in the rural police stations also. The jurisdiction of the police station is over a large area, covering several villages. The police stations cover all types of crime and legal issues, from petty quarrels to land disputes, theft, and violence. The police station is headed by the station House officer, or SHO, who has some constables with him to manage the routine issues.

3. Panchayati Raj is best suited for the development and administrative needs of rural people.

- It gives villagers a chance to actually participate in decision-making.
- Social and economic justice can be best achieved if local people are a part of the governing body.
- No one can be as familiar and as concerned about their problems as the local people themselves. Therefore, an understanding of their concerns will help them find solutions suitable to their needs.
- Panchayati Raj gives adequate training to the people in managing their affairs.

The villagers learn to cooperate and work together to solve their problems.

4. The main purpose of the inheritance law was, always given the property to the sons while the women in the family received some inheritance.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The Gram Panchayat meets regularly to implement the Compulsory Developmental Programmes. It performs some compulsory and some optional functions at the village level.

The Compulsory Functions

- Looking after the general sanitation of the village.
- Construction and maintenance of approach roads and dams.
- Management of cremation and burial ground.
- Provision of street lighting.

The Optional Functions

- Providing facilities for medical help to village people.
- Providing facilities for treatment of cattle.
- Holding fairs and cattle shows.

2. **Functions of the Panchayat Samiti**

- Coordinating and supervising the functioning of Panchayats.
- Implementation of community development programmes sponsored by the state government.
- Education of the children by establishing and maintaining institutions like schools, industrial training institutes, etc.
- Training of farmers in scientific methods of agriculture and animal husbandry.

Functions of the Zila Parishad

- It prepares plans for the development of the district based on reports submitted by the block samiti and the gram sabha.
- It supervises the implementation of the Five Year plans and Community Development Plans at the district level.
- Improvement in agricultural production, sanitation and health, maintenance of roads and other developmental actions are some of the actions taken up by the zilla parishads.
- It distributes the funds allotted to the district by the central or state government among the panchayat samitis.

3. The 73rd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1992 accorded the constitutional status to the Panchayati Raj institutions. The Act established a 3-tier system of Panchayati Raj for all states.

At the rural level, the form of local self-government is a three-tier Panchayati raj system :

- Gram panchayat at the village level
- Block samitis at the block level
- Zila parishads at the district level

(a) **Organisation of the Gram Panchayat :** The members of the Gram Sabha elect one of their members as Pradhan or the Sarpanch. He/She is the president of the Panchayat. The term of the Panchayat is 5 years. The Gram Panchayat also has a Secretary and a Gram Sewak to assist in its functioning.

(b) **Organisation of the Panchayat Samiti :** The Sarpanchs of all the gram panchayats under the panchayat samiti elect the members.

The Members of Parliament (MPs), Members of the Legislative Assemblies (MLAs) and Members of the Legislative Councils (MLCs) representing the block.

Seats are reserved for the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.

One-third of the total seats are reserved for women.

The chairperson and vice-chairperson are elected by the members of the block samiti.

The Block Development Officer (BDO), appointed by the state government is responsible for carrying out the plans of the panchayat samiti.

(c) **Organisation of the Zila Parishad :** Chairpersons of the Block Samities.

Members of the Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, Legislative Assembly and Legislature Council of the district.

Representatives of the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.

Representatives of Women.

The Zila Parishad elects its Chairman and Vice Chairman.

The Government appoints a Secretary of the Zila Parishad. He is a permanent employee of the Parishad. He maintains records and accounts.

5. Urban Administration

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. This body is responsible for providing clean drinking water, keeping the city clean, planting trees, lighting the streets, sanitation and many other tasks.
 2. The Municipal Corporations have been established in some major cities of India, such as Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai, Delhi and Patna. Municipalities are constituted in smaller towns and cities.
 3. 1/3 of the total seats.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. c. 3. c

C. Choose the correct option :

- Ans.**
1. Supply of clean drinking water is a (compulsory/voluntary) function of the Municipal Corporation.
 2. Nominated members of the corporations are known as (eldermen/councillors).
 3. Administering an area locally is (less/more) expensive than managing the area from a distant capital.
 4. The Commissioner of a Municipal corporation is appointed by the (central/state) government.
 5. A Municipal Council is elected for a period of (four/five) years.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. The city of Surat was troubled by Plague in **1994**.
 2. A **Commissioner** supervises the working of the corporation.
 3. Providing the **cheap and efficient transport facilities** is a voluntary function of the Municipal Corporation.
 4. The Municipal Council ensures proper **sanitation** in the city.
 5. Local government takes the benefits of **democracy** down to the grassroots.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. True.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. Apart from compulsory functions a Municipal Corporation performs several other functions if its resources permit. These voluntary functions include the following :
 - Development of gardens and parks to keep the citizens healthy and fit

- Construction and maintenance of children's homes, orphanages, night-shelters, rest-houses, old-age homes, etc.
2. Every city is divided into wards and each ward elects a member called Ward Councillor. There are also some nominated members to the corporations who are known as eldermen. The members of the corporation elect a Mayor and a Deputy Mayor from among themselves. The Municipal Corporation has a Commissioner, appointed by state government.
 3. The Nagar Panchayat requires finances for the implementation of its plans from the following sources:
 - Taxes from land, property, shops, etc.
 - Taxes on electricity and supply of water
 - Octroi and toll taxes
 - Grants-in-aid by the government
 4. The functions of the Municipal Council are the same as those of the municipal corporation. They:
 - establish hospitals, dispensaries, health centres and family planning centres
 - ensure proper sanitation in the city- the collection and disposal of garbage, and the cleaning of drains and streets
 - keep a record of births and deaths in the municipal areas

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. Municipal Corporations : The Municipal Corporation looks after the civic amenities in cities. This body is responsible for providing clean drinking water, keeping the city clean, planting trees, lighting the streets, sanitation and many other tasks. It also puts up signs in various places to inform people about diseases such as dengue, malaria, cholera, typhoid, etc., and how they can be prevented.

Municipal Councils : The Municipal Council or Municipality is the body that governs smaller cities and towns that have a population of more than 20,000 but less than 10 lakhs. The city is divided into a number of wards. Just as with the Corporation, the people of each ward elect and send a member to the municipality. One-third of the seats are reserved for women, and seats are reserved for the scheduled tribes and castes in proportion to their population in the city. Members of Parliament and Members of the State Legislature elected from the area are also members of the Municipal Councils.

Nagar Panchayats : The Nagar Panchayats govern the areas which are being transformed from rural to urban areas. Since, these areas are under the process of development, the needs of the people in these areas do not match exactly with either the rural or urban sectors. The occupations of the people living in these areas are in the process of transformation, from agriculture and rural livelihood to those related to services and modern business.

2. A Municipal Corporation has many duties/functions. Their functions may be broadly divided into compulsory and optional or voluntary functions. Some of them are listed below :

Compulsory Functions :

Public Health

- Opening of hospitals and dispensaries in different localities for treatment of diseases.
- Free vaccinations and inoculation for prevention of diseases like smallpox, cholera, polio and tuberculosis, etc.

Public Conveniences

- To provide vegetable markets, food grain markets and other consumer goods.
- Construction of urinal and toilets at busy public places.

Registration and Births and Deaths

- To maintain records of births and deaths and issue certificates for the same.
- To provide for and maintain graveyards, cremation grounds and electric crematoriums.

Public Education

- Opening of primary and secondary schools for children and to appoint teachers in those schools.
- Providing free and compulsory education.

Public Security

- Maintaining a fire-fighting service.
- Getting old bungalows demolished.

3. **Advantages of Local Self-Government**

- Local government ensures the best management of local resources.
- It also ensures the best management of local affairs as local people understand their own problems best.
- Local government takes the benefits of democracy down to the grass roots. It gives each villager and city dweller the power to make changes in his or her life.
- If the local bodies function efficiently, the areas they look after develop faster and in a more balanced manner.

The people of the area co-operate better with the local bodies as they know them personally, and feel that they working for their benefit.

6. Rural Livelihood

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. There are three types of occupations.
 2. They often have to borrow money because their earnings are usually not enough to meet even their basic needs.
 3. Big farmer have many sources of income in comparison of a middle farmer.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answers :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. c. 3. c.

C. Correct the highlighted words :

- Ans.** 1. Usually people follow different occupations.
2. People engaged in tertiary occupations provide services to others.
3. Rich farmers do not have to work on their fields.
4. The National Dairy Development Board was set up in 1965.
5. Moneylenders often charges a high rate of interest.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. A factory provides many opportunities for earning a livelihood.
2. **Primary** occupations are those jobs related to land.
3. Agricultural labourers do not have **work** throughout the year.
4. The National Dairy Development Board was set up in **1965**.
5. Local money lenders charge a very high rate of **interest**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Primary Occupations, i.e., those jobs related to land such as agriculture and related activities (animal husbandry). There are other occupations other than agriculture that are practised either solely or along with agriculture by the farmers in the villages. These include animal husbandry, fishing, poultry and livestock rearing.
2. For fulfill his basic needs the landless labourers migrate to towns and cities. Agricultural labourers do not own my land but work for wages on others farms. Their earnings are usually not enough to meet even their basic needs. Moreover, these labourers do not have work throughout the year. When there is no work available in the fields, they often have to migrate to the cities and small towns in search of work.
3. There are other occupations other than agriculture that are practised either solely or long with agriculture by the farmers in the villages. These include animal husbandry, fishing, poultry and livestock rearing.
- Animal husbandry :** Animal husbandry has a significant role to play in the rural economy as most of the families depend on it for additional income.
Rearing cattle, sheep, goats in a rural family is normal.
- Dairy industry :** The dairy industry saw phenomenal changes with the setting up of the National Dairy Development Board in 1965. The poultry producers no longer just cater for local markets, but have organised themselves into industries which produce quality products for both domestic and international markets.
- Fishing industry :** Fishing industry too has seen progress as it changed from being run by individuals and catering to the local markets to a promising industry with untapped potential. Government has made efforts to promote inland fish farming, modernising coastal fisheries, improving facilities for deep-sea fishing.
4. People living in villages, who do not own large plots of land or have no regular source of income, often have to borrow money from the trader or any other wealthy person. Unfortunately, the moneylender often charges a high rate of interest. Sometimes, a person borrows money by

mortgaging some of his land or cattle. If he is unable to return the loan, he loses it.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Depending upon the kind of work, occupations can be divided into three categories :
- Primary occupations
 - Secondary occupations
 - Tertiary occupations.
- Primary Occupations, i.e., those jobs related to land such as agriculture and related activities (animal husbandry).
Secondary Occupations, i.e., those jobs in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing such as industries, and
Tertiary Occupations, i.e., those jobs that provide services such as banking, transport and communication, etc.
2. Often rural people have to borrow money from money lenders and find it very difficult to repay the loan and the high amount of interest charged. Government provides rural credits through several Regional Rural Banker and Co-operative Banks. These banks are headed by National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development (NABARD).

7. Urban Livelihood

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Factory workers, shopkeepers, professionals like teachers, doctors, nurses, lawyers, clerks, officers and accountants etc.
2. This is so because they obstruct traffic and cause traffic jams.
3. Landless labourers migrate to the cities for a short time when they have no work to do in villages.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. a. 3. c.

C. Rewrite the underlined words correctly :

- Ans.** 1. The urban society is heterogeneous.
2. Big businessmen belong to high income group.
3. Teachers and doctors help to cure the sick.
4. People mostly migrate from u areas to urban areas.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Delhi, Mumbai** and **Chennai** are the main metros of India.
2. In terms of earnings, there are **three** main groups of people.
3. **Casual** workers are employed only when their services are required.
4. Landless labourers are employed as **casual** workers.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The service industry employs more than half the people working in cities. Shopkeepers, auto rickshaw and taxi drivers, teachers, doctors

and nurses all provide us with some service. Banks, insurance agencies, the railways, and the postal and telephone services are service providers that employ millions of people across the country.

2. Their earnings are much more than are required to meet their needs. Hence, they can save large amounts of money. Those who do permanent jobs get various benefits apart from their salaries. These include payment and leave for medical care, allowances for travelling, leave with pay, and facilities to save money for old age.

3. **Disadvantages :** They live on the outskirts of the cities in unhygienic conditions, without safe drinking water and electricity. They make a sizeable number of the urban poor. They are employed as casual workers because lack of professional knowledge.

Advantages : People from rural areas come in large numbers to cities in search of better jobs and in order to improve their standard of living. In the urban area many types of work available for these people.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. There are hundreds of people who work on the streets of a big city. They are called hawkers and street-vendors. There can be hawkers selling pirated books, magazines, cheap toys, or stationery. Vendors sell vegetables, fruits, plastic utensils, bangles, etc. Most of them do not have money to set up permanent shops. A few of them use wooden cardboard boxes to display their wares. Others spread papers on the ground or even put up makeshift shops with plastic sheets hung on bamboo poles. Some vendors sell food items, most of them home-made. Some big cities do not allow vendors to sell their wares in certain areas, because they obstruct traffic and cause traffic jams. They often block pavements and get in the way of pedestrians.
2. Earnings of regular workers are much more than are required to meet their needs. Hence they can save large amounts of money. Those who do permanent jobs get various benefits apart from their salaries. These include payment and leave for medical care, allowances for travelling, leave with pay, and facilities to save money for old age. Some workers are employed only for periods during which the factory requires their services. They are called casual workers. Working in a factory is often tough, as the shifts are long. Besides, not all factories follow the government's law of minimum wages. So, many of the workers receive low wages. Factory jobs may also be quite risky, as all factories do not take proper measures to prevent accidents.

World We Live In-7

1. Environment

GEOGRAPHY

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

1. The narrow contact zone of land, water and air which supports life is known as biosphere.
2. Atmosphere is very important for us because it provides all the life supporting environment such as oxygen, humidity and suitable temperature.
3. The two major classifications of environment are natural environment and human environment.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

1. b. exosphere
2. c. core
3. c. oxygen

C. Fill in the blanks :

1. **Human** environment refers to the activities and creations of human beings.
2. The Earth can be divided into three layers namely, **crust, mantle** and **core**.
3. The continuous motion of water is known as **water** cycle.
4. An **ecosystem** consists of both living and non-living components.
5. Over-population is causing huge pressure on the **resources** of the Earth.

D. Distinguish between :

1. **Biotic environment** : It comprises of the biotic components like human beings, plants, animals and even the microbial organisms.

Abiotic environment : It comprises of the abiotic or non-living components like land, water and air.

2. **Atmosphere** : The air which surrounds the Earth is called the atmosphere. The Earth's gravitational pull holds the atmosphere around it.

Hydrosphere : The hydrosphere is the domain of water. All the water bodies such as the oceans, seas, rivers and lakes together make up the hydrosphere.

3. **Natural environment** : All those things that are naturally existing around us are together called natural environment. These things are the free gifts of nature for example, plants, animals, land air, water etc.

Man-made environment : This includes changes and modifications of the natural environment made by human beings. It shows the activities, creations and interactions among human beings.

E. Match the following :

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|-------------------|
| 1. Radiowaves | → | a. Lithosphere |
| 2. Mantle | → | b. Earth |
| 3. Unique planet | → | c. Plant life |
| 4. Increase in Earth's temperature | → | d. Ionosphere |
| 5. Flora | → | e. Global warming |

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

1. The thin and solid upper covering of the Earth is known as lithosphere. It is the top layer of the Earth which is upper granite and the intermediate basic layers on which all the continents and the oceans rest. Lithosphere is very important for all sorts of life in the sense that it provides food to all living beings, all kinds of minerals and metals are embedded in the rock's strata. It has soil which is used for cultivation of crops.
2. Biosphere is a narrow zone between the three realms of the Earth namely land, air and water. This is mainly concerned with all sorts of life forms. This zone supports varieties of organisms, some are very minute which cannot be viewed with our naked eyes like micro-organisms, and some are very big like elephant, blue whale, etc.
3. The gaseous envelope surrounding the Earth with a gravitational force is known as atmosphere. It extends up to a height of about 1600 metres above the earth's surface. Atmosphere is very important for all living beings. It protects us from the Ultra Violet Radiations which are very harmful. It prevents earth from extreme hotness and coldness. It acts as greenhouse glass which provides a base for life.
4. Surroundings or conditions within which an individual or organism exists is termed environment. The place we live in, the people and things around us the plants, animals, the land, the buildings all are part of our environment.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. Ecosystem is a system formed by the interaction of all living organisms with each other and with their environment through transfer of energy and material. In other words, it refers to a community of plants and animals within a particular physical environment which is linked by a flow of materials through the non-living as well as the living sections of system. All plants, animals and human beings depend on their immediate surroundings. They are interdependent on each other also. That is, the relation between the living organisms, as well as the relation between the organisms and their surroundings form an ecosystem.
2. Natural environment of an organism consists of those elements that are provided by nature. It includes relief, rocks, climate, soil, natural vegetation, wildlife etc. Natural environment is made up of two kinds of components
 - (i) Non-living (abiotic) components which include soil, rocks, Sunlight, temperature, air, water etc. These comprise the physical environment.

- (ii) Living or biotic components—which include plants, animals and human beings. These comprise the Biological environment.
- 3. The two major components of biotic environment are as follows :
 - (i) Producers or autotrophs—organisms that produce their own food directly from the environment, for example, plants.
 - (ii) Consumers or heterotrophs—organisms that depend on plants and animals for food, for example, human beings and animals.
- 4. Human beings form the most important part of the environment. They not only interact within the environment, but also modify it according to their needs. Early man lived in the natural environment and adapted himself to the nature around him. But today's man is different. His needs have grown and in order to meet his growing demands, man has modified the environment around him. This has affected and changed several ecosystems. It has resulted in disturbing the ecological balance and degrading the environment. Environmental degradation has disastrous effects. Man must be sensitive to environmental issues and learn to protect the environment. He must maintain balance between natural and human environment and learn to live in harmony with nature. He must use the resources wisely. He must protect and preserve them for tomorrow.

2. The Impenetrable Depths

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. A rock is usually a mixture of various materials.
 2. The wearing and tearing of rocks by the agents of gradation is known as degradation.
 3. Rocks are widely used in almost all the construction activities and not just that there are many other uses of rocks too. We use rocks for roads, metals and jewellery.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. b. 3. a. 4. a.

C. Correct the following sentences :

- Ans.**
1. The Earth's interior may be divided into **three** main layers.
 2. The surface layer of the Earth is known as the crust.
 3. The **central** core has very high temperature and pressure.
 4. **Sedimentary** rocks are also known as stratified rocks.
 5. Marble and quartzite are examples of **metamorphic** rocks.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. The Earth is divided into three **concentric** layers.
 2. The mantle is rich in **silica** and **magnesium**.
 3. A **rock** is usually a mixture of various materials.
 4. Sedimentary rocks are often rich in **fossils**.
 5. The **rock cycle** is a continuous process in which rocks change from one kind into another.

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. False 5. True

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. A rock is usually a mixture of various materials.

The three types of rocks are :

Igneous Rocks

Sedimentary Rocks

Metamorphic Rocks

2. Igneous rocks are also known as the primary rocks because these are the ancestors of all other rocks.
3. The rock cycle is a continuous process in which rocks change from one kind into another. Igneous rocks disintegrate under the impact of the forces of nature. The broken material gets deposited on the floor of the oceans, seas, rivers, and lakes to form sedimentary rocks. Sedimentary rocks under extreme pressure and temperature change into metamorphic rocks. Again, under extreme heat and pressure, metamorphic and sedimentary rocks melt to form magma, from which igneous rocks are formed. Thus, the rocks cycle continues.
4. The rock forming materials are called minerals. Minerals are chemical substances found in nature. They have definite chemical composition and physical characteristics.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. The Earth is divided into three concentric layers—crust, mantle and core. Each of these layers has its own characteristics.

Crust

The surface layer of the Earth is known as the crust. It consists of the thinnest of all the layers of about 35 km on the continental masses and only 5 km on the ocean floors. The continental mass mainly consists of silica and alumina. It is, thus, called sial (si-silica and al-alumina) whereas the oceanic crust mainly consists of silica and magnesium; it is, therefore, called sima (si-silica and ma-magnesium).

Mantle

The next layer below lithosphere, which extends to a depth of about 2900km, is called the mantle. This layer consists of inner silicates. It is rich in silica and magnesium. This layer is called sima as it is made of silicates and magnesium. This is the transitional zone of mixed metals and silicates. Both the temperature and density of the mantle increase with increasing depth towards the centre of the Earth.

Core

The innermost layer is the core with a radius of about 3500 km. It consists of nickel and iron and is called nife (in-nickel and fe-ferrous i.e. iron). The central core has very high temperature and pressure. The temperature range varies between 2,200°C and 5,000°C.

2. Various exagentic forces like weathering, erosion, aggradations, degradations, etc. cause the rocks to disintegrate. The wear and tear of the rocks into smaller fragments and their deposition leads to the formation of sedimentary rocks. Igneous rocks when exposed to the various agents of gradation like wind, air, glacier and water etc.

transport the small particles or fragments of rocks under the influence of water and deposit it at one place in the form of layers. Hence, they are also known as stratified rocks. The loose and unconsolidated particles get compacted and form a layer, and in an influence of pressure forms within the Earth.

3. The word 'igneous' has been taken from a Latin word 'ignis', which means fire. All the igneous rocks have come up after the cooling and solidification of the molten material known as 'Magma'. By the internal pressure and heat, the rocks inside the Earth gets melted into liquid form which is pushed further towards the surface where it cools down and gets solidified, thereby making up the crust.

The rocks which are formed due to the solidification of lava on the surface of Earth are known as 'Extrusive Igneous Rocks'. The rocks which are formed due to the solidification of magma within the Earth are known as 'Intrusive Igneous Rocks'.

3. Earth's Movements and Major Landforms

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The two types of forces that bring about gradation are Endogenic forces and Exogenic forces.
 2. A gorge is a deep ravine between pairs of cliffs.
 3. Glaciers carry huge amount of pieces of rocks of varying size, sand and silt gets deposited at certain places. such deposits are called moraines.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer ;

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. a. 3. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. There are seven major **lithospheric** plates.
 2. **Weathering** happens when rocks are broken into smaller pieces.
 3. A **volcano** is a vent or a crack in the Earth's crust.
 4. The raised banks of the river flowing through the flood plain are called **levees**.
 5. Loess are usually found in **China**.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Glacier → a. Sea shore
 2. Meanders → b. Deserts
 3. Beach → c. River of ice
 4. Sand dunes → d. Fall at steep angle
 5. Waterfall → e. River

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The process of breaking down or decomposition of rocks in the that is, in their place of origin is called weathering.
 On the other hand, Erosion, is the wearing down of the rocks by agents of gradation, such as river, wind, glaciers and waves and transporting the eroded materials from their place of origin, to be deposited elsewhere a later stage.

2. The crust of the Earth is broken into a number of large and small plates known as the 'Lithospheric plates'. The movement is because of the heat generated by the molten magma inside the Earth which moves in a circular manner.
3. Vibrations or shaking of the Earth's crust caused due to forces of the Earth's interior is called earthquake.
4. Depending upon the frequency of eruptions, the volcanoes can be classified as active, dormant and extinct.
Active Volcanoes : These are those volcanoes which have the possibility of future eruptions. Examples : Stromboli and Etna in Italy.
Dormant Volcanoes : These are those volcanoes which have not erupted for a long time. Examples : Mt. Vesuvius and many in Andes mountains.
Extinct Volcanoes : These are those volcanoes which have no possibility of any eruption in the future. Examples : Mt Kilimanjaro and Mt Rainier.
5. A river follows a curved path instead of straight. In its course it forms meanders. These meanders are usually S-shaped and sometimes the curvature becomes so sharp that the river breaks through the meander and forms a loop known as oxbow lake.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The running river water erodes the landscape. It falls at steep angle over rocks or down a steep valley side and forms a waterfall. The following features are made by a river :

Meanders and Oxbow lakes : This is a feature which is formed in the middle course of the river when the erosive power of water becomes less and river starts depositing the sediments. The river follows a curved path instead of straight. These meanders are usually S-shaped and sometimes the curvature becomes so sharp that the river breaks through the meander and forms a loop known as oxbow lake.

Flood Plains : A flood plain is an almost flat plain that is formed as a result of a river flooding its banks. It borders the river. Unable to carry its entire load of sediments the river deposits some of it on its bed. This raises the level of water so that it almost reaches the tops of the river banks.

The raised banks of the river flowing through the flood plain are called levees.

Deltas : As a river nears its mouth (the place where it meets the sea), it deposits its sediments in the form of sand bars. To move through the sand bars, the river breaks up into a number of channels called distributaries. The mouth of the river is also called a delta. A delta is more or less triangular alluvial tract formed by the sediments deposited by the distributaries as the river enters the sea.

2. Glaciers are rivers of ice. The moving ice mass down slope under the impact of gravity is called a glacier. The glaciers generally gives birth to the devotional land forms in the highlands, while the despositional land forms in the lowland areas.

Features made by the ice are

Crevasses : The series of cracks developed on the glacier due to the splitting up of ice because of unequal movement.

Bergschrund : A big crack developed due to the movement of upper part of the valley glacier. This big crack developed is covered by fresh snow in winters but in summers, the water in it melts down.

U-shaped valley : The pre-existing valleys are widened by the ice while moving. Hence, in this way, V-shaped valleys change into U-shaped valleys.

Moraines : The glaciers carry material of unsorted nature like rock fragments, boulders, glacier flour, silts, etc. When ice is not able to carry this material along with it, it is deposited on the way which is known as moraines.

3. Weathering refers to the gradual disintegration of rocks on the earth's surface by atmospheric agents like, temperature, moisture, plants, animals, frost, human beings, etc.

Erosion is the wearing away of the landscape by different agents like water, wind and ice.

The weathering and erosion are interlinked with each other. The weathering process takes place with the help of number of geomorphic agents like running water, glaciers, wind, ocean current etc. These agents carry away the eroded materials and eventually deposit it in the depressions to form new landscapes.

The following types of coastal landforms are formed of combined efforts of erosion and weathering :

River valleys, waterfall, meanders, ox box lakes, floodplains, levees, deltas, sea caves, sea arches, stacks, sea cliff, beaches, bars and barriers, U-shaped valleys, moraines, mushroom rocks, demoiselles, sand dunes and loess.

4. Air

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Gaseous envelope surrounding the Earth with a gravitational force is known as atmosphere.
2. The horizontal movement of air along the surface of the Earth is called wind.
3. The degree of hotness or coldness of the air is called as temperature.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b. 3. a. 4. c.

C. Encircle the correct option :

- Ans.** 1. Presence of Carbon dioxide/oxygen makes Earth warm.
2. Thermosphere/mesosphere is the third layer of the atmosphere.
3. Humidity/Temperature refers to the degrees of hotness or coldness of the air.
4. Air pressure is the highest/lowest at sea level.

5. The instrument used to measure rainfall is called a barometer (rain gauge).

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Presence of **carbon dioxide** makes the Earth warm.
2. The average height of the troposphere is **13 km**.
3. **Exosphere** is the uppermost layer of the atmosphere.
4. The degree of hotness and coldness of the air is known as **temperature**.
5. **Rainfall** is an important form of precipitation.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The Troposphere, Stratosphere, Mesosphere, Thermosphere and Exosphere are the five layers of the atmosphere.
2. Permanent winds, periodic winds, Local winds and variable winds.
3. The two gases make up the bulk of the earth's atmosphere : are nitrogen (N_2), which comprises 78% of the atmosphere and oxygen (O_2), which accounts for 21%.
Nitrogen is useful for both the plants and small organisms like bacteria etc. for their survival.
Oxygen is also called the life gas, as it is the basis of the life for all organisms including human beings. It is essential for combustion.
4. Weather is the atmospheric condition in a small area over a short period of time, the term 'climate' refers to the average weather conditions of a large area over a long period of time spanning 25/30 years. The weather of any area may change at short intervals. It might be windy at one-time of the day or sunny and humid at another point of time. But climate of any place is of a permanent nature, e.g., India experiences Tropical type of climate or Sri Lanka enjoys Equatorial type of climate.
5. Air has weight and it exerts its weight as pressure on the surface of the earth. This weight of air is called atmospheric pressure.
There are two factors which influence the atmospheric pressure; namely temperature and altitude. As we go higher, the layer of the atmosphere becomes thinner and the pressure decreases. When the air gets heated it expands and becomes light. This hot air rises up words resulting in the formation of low pressure.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Gaseous envelope surrounding the Earth with a gravitational force is known as atmosphere.
Air, generally used as a synonym for atmosphere, is not a specific gas but rather a mixture of gases, mainly nitrogen and oxygen. One of the facts which makes earth a unique planet in the solar system is the presence of atmosphere. This atmosphere contains the most important gas (life supporting or building block), named oxygen. Atmosphere protects us from harmful ultraviolet radiations emitted by sun. Ultraviolet radiations emitted are harmful and cause various skin diseases and ailments. It is absorbed by the ozone layer (O_3). Most of the atmosphere is concentrated in the lower layers of the atmosphere near the surface of the Earth.
Presence of carbon dioxide (CO_2) makes Earth warm, otherwise it

would become extremely cold. Regarding its extent, there are lots of views prevalent. Atmosphere extends outward at least 10,000 kilometres.

2. The atmosphere is divided into five layers starting from the Earth's surface. These are—Troposphere, Stratosphere, Mesosphere, Thermosphere and Exosphere.

The Troposphere

The first and the most important layer of the atmosphere is made out of the gases that we breathe every day. Its average height is 13 km. This layer is called the troposphere. The troposphere is the layer that we live in and where all weather phenomena like rainfall, fog and hailstorm take place. The layer closest to the surface is the troposphere, which contains over 80 per cent of the atmospheric mass and nearly all the water vapour.

The Stratosphere

It lies above the troposphere and extends to a height of 50 km above the surface. This layer is free from weather phenomena like clouds, thus, providing ideal conditions for flying of jet planes. This layer is rich in ozone which protects us from harmful ultra-violet rays of the Sun.

Mesosphere

This is the third layer of the atmosphere. It lies above the stratosphere. It extends up to the height from 50 to 80 km. This is the coldest layer in the atmosphere. The temperature reaches to 100°C at the height of 8 km.

Thermosphere

It is the atmospheric layer between the mesosphere and the exosphere. The temperature rises to 1500°C . Ionosphere is a part of this layer. It extends between 80 to 400 km. It helps in radio transmission.

Exosphere

It is the uppermost layer of the atmosphere where the density of air is very thin. It has no outer limit and ultimately merges into inter planetary space.

3. The main factors responsible for influencing temperature on the earth are latitude, altitude, distance from the sea and prevailing winds.

The higher the latitude, the lower the temperature, the amount of heat is the greatest near the equator and starts decreasing as we move away from the equator towards the poles. That is why, poles are covered with snow. The reason is that the places near the equator receive vertical rays of the sun.

- The higher the altitude, the lower will be the temperature.
- We feel cooler on the mountains since, air is less dense on the mountains, solar radiation cannot be easily trapped.
- Water takes longer to heat or cool. So, the places near the sea or any large water body have mild or moderate temperature.
- If a wind is blowing from a cooler area then the temperature will be lowered and vice-versa.

4. There are three types of rainfall—convective, relief and cyclonic rainfall.

Convective rainfall : During the day when air comes in contact with

the hot surface of the Earth, it gets heated, becomes light and rise up. On reaching the upper layers of the atmosphere, it cools down. The water vapour in it condenses and rainfall occurs as heavy downpour. It is sudden and often accompanied by thunder and lightning. This kind of rain is called convectional rainfall.

Relief rainfall : It occurs when a range of mountains or hills lies in the path of moisture-bearing winds. The warm moist air is forced to rise when it meets an obstruction. As the air moves upwards, it starts cooling. The water vapour in it condenses and rainfall occurs. The windward side, that is the side of the mountain facing the winds, receives the maximum rainfall.

Cyclonic rainfall : In a cyclone, when winds from all sides blow towards the centre, different air masses meet. When warm air meets cold air, the warm air being lighter rises above the cold air. The rising warm air cools and condensation takes place, causing rainfall.

5. The Hydrosphere

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. The continuous circulation of water between oceans, atmosphere and land is known as the water cycle.
 2. About 71 per cent of the surface is covered by it due to which Earth is also known as the 'Blue Planet'.
 3. Giant sea waves, caused by underwater earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, or landslides, are called tsunamis.
 4. The periodic rise and fall of the water level in the sea which occur at regular intervals twice a day are called tides.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. b. 4. a.

C. Give a single term for each of the following :

- Ans.** 1. Water cycle 2. Ocean 3. Salinity
4. Spring tides 5. Neap tides

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. **Water** is an essential component for life on Earth.
 2. The continuous circulation of water between **oceans, atmosphere** and **land** is known as the water cycle.
 3. **Terrarium** is an artificial enclosure for keeping small houseplants.
 4. The periodic rise and fall of the water level of the sea is called **tides**.
 5. The main cause of the movement of the ocean current is the **wind** effect.

E. Give reasons for the following :

- Ans.**
1. Most of the water (97%) available on the Earth is in the seas and oceans. This water is salty, hence, unfit for human use. As such only 3% of the water is available for human use.
 2. Tides are a source of energy. During high tide, when the sea water rushes in, its energy can be harnessed to generate electricity. Tidal power stations have been set up in Canada, Japan and France.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The three types of movement of ocean water are :
- (i) **Waves** : The upward and downward movement of water particles is known as a wave.
 - (ii) **Tides** : Tides are the periodic rise and fall of the water level in the sea which occur at regular intervals twice a day.
 - (iii) **Currents** : Flowing streams of water that move continually through the ocean in a specific direction are called currents.
2. Waves are formed when winds rub across the ocean surface.
3. The movements of ocean water are due to the following reasons :
- a. Differences in temperature of ocean water.
 - b. Differences in salinity of sea water.
 - c. Prevailing winds.
 - d. Gravitational effect of moon.
 - e. Shape of continents effecting the direction of current.
 - f. Rotation of Earth.
4. Due to convection, the warm currents that originate near the Equator move towards the Poles. The cold currents carry ocean water from the Polar or higher latitudes to the tropical or lower latitudes. Oceans are in continual motion due to the spinning of the Earth, the gravitational attraction of the Moon, surface winds, and heating by the Sun. Ocean currents occur on and below the ocean surface. Ocean currents on the surface are basically caused by winds. Deep ocean currents are caused by the uneven heating of ocean water by the Sun.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Tides are the periodic rise and fall of the water level in the sea which occur at regular intervals twice a day.
Tides are caused by the gravitational pull of the Moon and the Sun. The Moon exerts a larger gravitational pull than the Sun even though it is smaller in size. This is because the distance between the Earth and the Moon is less compared to that between the Earth and the Sun.
When the level of sea water rises it is high tide and when the level falls it is low tide.
2. **Tides are useful to us in the following ways :**
- During high tide the water level near the coast rises. This allows big ships to enter or leave harbours safely. The ports of Kandla in Gujarat and Diamond Harbour in West Bengal are tidal ports.
 - The rush of water up the mouths of rivers during high tide also helps the movement of large ships in and out of river ports.
 - Tides help in fishing too. During high tide, when the water level rises, more fishes come near the shore. This helps fishermen to get a plentiful catch.
 - Tides are a source of energy. During high tide, when the sea water rushes in, its energy can be harnessed to generate electricity. Tidal power stations have been set up in Canada, Japan and France.
 - Very often big rivers deposit huge loads of silt at their mouth. The tidal waters wash away the deposits and keep the river mouth open for vessels to ply.

3. **Warm water currents :** Warm water currents are carried from the Equator to the Poles. The Sun's rays strike the Earth directly at the Equator (they are more concentrated) and so, they warm up the water in the area. Warm currents bring about warm temperature. The Labrador Ocean current is cold current while the Gulf Stream is a warm current.
- Cold water currents :** Cold water currents are carried from the Poles to the Equator. The Sun's rays strike the Earth at a low angle at the Poles (they are spread out) and so, the water is cold in this area. Cold water currents carry cold water away from the North Pole and the South Pole. Most of east coast is affected by warm water currents, and most of west coast is affected by cold water currents.
4. Ocean currents are useful to us in the following ways :
1. Ocean currents influence the climate of a place by raising/lowering the temperature.
 2. Where warm and cold currents meet there is plenty of fish food (plankton) making the region a rich fishing ground.
 3. Meeting of warm and cold currents leads to heavy condensation and produces intense fog. This is a major problem for shipping.
 4. Ocean-going ships use currents to their advantage and save cost on fuel.

6. Natural Vegetation and Wildlife

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. Natural Vegetation of an area means the plants growing naturally in that area and not due to any human activity.
 2. Factors that affect the growth of vegetation are temperature, rainfall, type of soil and altitude.
 3. We celebrate the wildlife week to preserve the animal life.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. a.

C. Correct the following sentences :

- Ans.**
1. Tropical **deciduous** forests are found in the Monsoon parts of India.
 2. Temperate **evergreen** forests are the mixed forests with hardwood trees.
 3. Polar bears, silver fox and mink are found in **coniferous** forests.
 4. Temperate grasslands in **South** America are known as Pampas.
 5. Gir forests in Gujarat are the home to **Asiatic lions**.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. The natural vegetation of an area sustains **wildlife** and provides **habitat**.
 2. **Logging** is difficult in the tropical evergreen forests.
 3. Trees in the tropical deciduous forests are of great **commercial** value.
 4. **Mediterranean** forests are found on the western margins of the continents.
 5. The major occupation in the coniferous forests is **Lumbering**.

E. Differentiate between the following :

Ans. 1. Tropical Evergreen Forests

These are found in the Amazon and the Orinoco basins in South America, Congo, basins of Africa, and in South East Asian countries. The hot and humid climate in these areas help in the growth of thick vegetation with as many as 50 species of trees in one hectare. The year round growing conditions allow broad-leaved evergreen trees to grow with a broad canopy at the top. The hardwood trees like mahogany, rosewood, ebony, etc. are found here. Logging is difficult because many types of species are found. These forests are also called selvas or equatorial forests.

Temperate Evergreen Forests

These are found along the eastern margins of the continents. South China, southeastern USA, southeastern Brazil, Uruguay, east coast of South Africa and eastern Australia are the areas where such forests are found. These are the mixed forests with hardwood trees. The timber from these forests is considered to be valuable. The lowlands have generally mixed forests of coniferous and deciduous varieties while the highlands have only coniferous trees. The main trees in these forests are oak, pine, wattle, eucalyptus, etc. These are evergreen trees.

2. Tropical Grasslands

These grasslands are also called savanna and are found in the tropical zone on either side of the equatorial region in Africa, parts of Brazilian plateau, Deccan plateau of India and northern Australia. The total annual rainfall of 25 cm to 75 cm is too moist for a desert and too dry for a forest. Tall grasses, about two metres high, are found in most of the areas. There are few scattered trees which can withstand the distinct dry season. Most of the tropical grasslands are now used for grazing and farming. Some grasslands are converting into deserts.

Temperate Grasslands

Seasonal grasslands or temperate grasslands are found in the mid-latitudinal zones (40°-45° latitudes) in the interior parts of continents. Usually, grass here is short and nutritious. These grasslands are best suited for cattle rearing. Wild buffaloes, bison, antelopes are common in the temperate region. Temperate Grasslands are known by different names in different countries such as Steppes in Europe, Pampas in South America, Downs in Australia, Veld in South Africa and Prairie in North America.

3. Thorny Vegetation

This type of vegetation is mainly found in the dry desert like regions in the western margins of the continents, in the tropical desert areas such as North Africa. The vegetation cover is scarce here because of scanty rain and scorching heat. Cacti, thorny bushes and coarse grasses are found here.

Tundra Vegetation

This type of vegetation is found in regions north of the Arctic Circle, which is called the Tundra. It extends over the northern part of Canada

and Alaska, southern Greenland and the northern part of Eurasia bordering the Arctic Ocean.

The long and severe winters do not allow any substantial plant growth. A few stunted trees like willow, birch and alder grow in areas bordering the Taiga forests. The ground is covered with snow for a large part of the year. During the short summers, some small flowering plants, mosses and lichens grow. The most important animals found in the Tundra region are the reindeer, walrus, seal, polar bear, fox, musk-ox and certain others.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. The three broad categories of natural vegetation are forests, grasslands and deserts.

2. **Mediterranean Vegetation**

These forests are found on the western margins of continents, mostly in the temperate region in both the hemispheres. In these areas the summer season is dry. There is moderate rainfall, about 80 cm during the winter season. Trees mostly with broad leaves, long roots and thick barks are found here. Trees are widely spaced and have shrubs between them. The main trees found in these forests are oak, olive, fig, pine, cedar, cypress, etc. Nuts, olive oil, citrus fruits and cork are some of the products from these forests.

3. **Uses of coniferous forests :**

- Frozen ground in winter makes access easier for machinery and transport.
- The softwood is used to make paper, matches, furniture, etc.
- It can be harvested like a crop using modern machinery and the new method of clear cutting.

4. Tropical Rainforests are also called evergreen forests because they get more rainfall and they do not have any particular dry seasons. The trees do not shed their leaves together this reason they are evergreen. The thick canopies of the closely spaced trees do not allow sunlight to pass into the forest even day time.

5. **Tundra Vegetation**

This type of vegetation is found in regions north of the Arctic Circle, which is called the Tundra. It extends over the northern part of Canada and Alaska, southern Greenland and the northern part of Eurasia bordering the Arctic Ocean.

The long and severe winters do not allow any substantial plant growth. A few stunted trees like willow, birch and alder grow in areas bordering the Taiga forests. The ground is covered with snow for a large part of the year. During the short summers, some small flowering plants, mosses and lichens grow.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. Forest refers to an extensive area of land covered mostly with trees. They grow mostly in the areas of heavy rain.

Tropical evergreen forests : These forests are well grown in the areas near the equator and close to the tropics. Mainly found in Amazon basin,

Zaire basin, Vietnam, Indonesia, etc. These are also called the tropical rain forests. Hardwood trees like ebony, mahogany, rosewood, etc. are found in these forests. Apes, snakes, lizards, monkeys, crocodiles, elephants, pythons etc. are the main animals found here.

Tropical Deciduous forests : These are found in northern Australia, central America and in the large portion of India. These forests are also called the monsoon forests. Hardwood trees like teak, neem, sal, shisham, etc. are found in these forests. Langoors, monkeys, lions, tigers, elephants, etc. are the main animals of these forests.

Temperate evergreen forests : South-East USA, South China, southern Japan, eastern Africa, South-East Australia, Uruguay, south-East Brazil, etc. are the main areas having temperate evergreen forests. Oak, pine, wattle, eucalyptus, walnut, camphor, etc. are the main trees found in these forests. Sheep, cattle, pig are the main animals of these forests.

Temperate Deciduous forests : These forests are found in New Zealand, Japan, North-East, China, North-East USA, Southern Chile and in the western Europe. Beech oak, ash, fir, maple, cedar, poplar are the main trees of these forests. The animals like deer, beavers, wolves, foxes, squirrels, etc. are commonly found here. Monals and pheasants are the main birds of the temperate deciduous forests.

Mediterranean Vegetation : It is found in the areas like south-west USA, south-west Africa, south-western south America, south-west Australia, Italy, Spain, south France, Portugal, Greece, etc. Mediterranean vegetation is world famous for its variety of citrus like grapes, oranges, etc. Olives, fig, oaks, pines, fir, cedar, etc. are found in these regions. This region is famous for golden eagle, spiny-mouse, wild goat, etc.

Coniferous forests : These are found in the northern hemisphere between 50° to 70° N latitude especially in southern Canada, Russia, Norway and Sweden, Larch, fir, spruce, pine, cedar, etc. are the main vegetation found in these forests. Mink, polar bear, silver fox, sable, beaver, reindeer, caribou, musk rat, etc. are the main animals of these forests.

Grasslands are found in the regions of moderate and low amount of rainfall. The grass can grow tall about 3 to 4 metres in height. Grasslands appear between 5° and 15° north and south of the Equator. The grasslands of the world are categorised into following two types.

- Tropical grasslands
- Temperate grasslands

Tropical Grasslands : These grasslands are also called **savanna** and are found in the tropical zone on either side of the equatorial region in Africa, parts of Brazilian plateau, Deccan plateau of India and northern Australia. The total annual rainfall of 25 cm to 75 cm is too moist for a desert and too dry for a forest. Tall grasses, about two metres high, are found in most of the areas. There are few scattered trees which can withstand the distinct dry season. Most of the tropical grasslands are now used for grazing and farming. Some grasslands are converting into deserts.

Temperate Grasslands : Seasonal grasslands or **temperate grasslands** are found in the mid-latitudinal zones (40° 45° latitudes) in the interior parts of continents. Usually, grass here is short and nutritious. These grasslands are best suited for cattle rearing. Wild buffaloes, bisons, antelopes are common in the temperate region. Temperate Grasslands are known by different names in different countries such as **Steppes** in Europe, **Pampas** in South America, downs in Australia, Veld in south Africa and **Prairie** in North America.

7. Human Environment

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The various modes used to go one place to another is called means of transport.
 2. A group of shelters of houses makes up a settlement.
 3. Communication is the process of sending messages and ideas from one person to another.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. a. 4. a.

C. Correct the following sentences :

- Ans.** 1. **Waterways** are the cheapest means of transportation.
 2. Places like cities and large towns are called **urban** areas.
 3. The Golden Quadrilateral is an expressway.
 4. The Indian Ocean is linked with the Mediterranean Sea through the **Suez Canal**.
 5. **Railways** transport large quantities of bulky goods and raw material from one place to another.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Common Indian villages are called **rural settlements**.
 2. Rural settlements have **limited** resources to fulfil the local needs of the people.
 3. In olden times, man travelled from one place to another on **carts**.
 4. The invention of the **wheels** accelerated the development of rail transport.
 5. **Communication** refers to the exchange of ideas and thoughts.

E. Match the following :

Ans. Column A

1. Urban areas
2. Internet
3. Mass communication
4. Canal route
5. Compact settlement

Column B

- a. Communicating with thousands of people at the same time.
- b. Areas where people are engaged in manu-facturing, trade and services.
- c. A means of communi-cation
- d. Closely-built area of houses.
- e. Inland waterway

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The settlements belong to village are called the rural settlements while

those who belong to cities or towns, are termed as urban settlements.

In rural settlements, people are engaged in the primary activities, like agriculture, mining, animals rearing, dairy farming, fishing, etc. While in the urban settlements, trade, transport, industrial production, defence administration, cultural recreation, etc. are the main activities performed by their people.

2. **Cultural towns** : In this we include the towns that are major educational centres or centres of cultural activities. Oxford and Cambridge (both in the UK) and Shantiniketan are good examples.
3. The railways today are the fastest means of land transport which are suitable for long distance travelling. Though initially steam engines were used to run trains, today they have been replaced by electric engines which are not only faster but also eco-friendly and don't cause pollution. The construction of railway lines depends upon the relief features, climatic conditions, density of population and availability of resources. The railways are quick and cheap means of transport. It carries bulky goods and raw materials over long distance.
4. Communication refers to the exchange of ideas, thoughts, views and messages. It serves as a link between not only two persons but between various cultures around. It acts as a medium for cross-cultural connections.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. i. Circular settlements generally develop in flat level areas, around a pond, tank or a lake. The village tank not only provides water, material for building huts and houses but also is a centre of all activities.

ii. Radial settlements are built along the streets which spread out from a central point in all directions. They are also called star-shaped settlements.

iii. Compact settlements have houses built very close to each other. The animal sheds form the part of the house. They have narrow and winding streets. Such settlements are found mostly in river valleys and in fertile plains.

iv. Linear settlements are built along a road or along a railway track. If settlements are found on both sides of the track or roads they are called parallel settlements.

v. Scattered settlements are mostly found in hills and forests. The houses are scattered over large areas. These units may have a common bond like a place of worship or a market.

2. **Advantages of Waterways :**

- It is the cheapest means of carrying heavy and bulky goods over long distances.
- In rural areas waterways serve a very cheap means of transport for people also.

Disadvantages of Waterways :

- Waterways are not available everywhere since it requires either sea, oceans, big rivers or big lakes.
- Sea-pirates capture ships causing huge losses to the waterways.

3. Some of the rapid means of communication are television, telephone, mobile, fax, pagers, newspapers, etc. With the introduction of all these gadgets and media, the world became a global village. You can talk to your near and dear ones who are living far off, within seconds. Satellites in the space have made it very fast for mankind to communicate their ideas and thoughts. The Internet is another means through which people are connected with each other. It provides us with the news and information of the world around. The Internet and computers have made it very easy for us to transfer knowledge and information and get education online. We make use of email services for sending important documents and papers of administrative importance. With the advancement in all these media, the world has shrunk.

8. Life in the Tropical and Sub-tropical Regions

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The Amazon River Basin located in the continent of South America.
 2. The Ganga originates from the Gangotri glacier.
 3. The tropical evergreen forests and moist deciduous forests are found in the Ganga-Brahmaputra Basin.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. c. 4. a.

C. Cancel out the incorrect option :

- Ans.** 1. Seringueros/Lumberers are the rubber-gatherers found in the Amazon basin.
 2. Belem/Manans is the chief port of the Amazon.
 3. The length of the Ganga-Brahmaputra Basin is about 3000 mt/2500 km.
 4. The Brahmaputra/Ganga is the longest river in India.
 5. Most of the people in the Ganga-Brahmaputra Basin live in the cities/villages.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- The **Amazon Basin** stretches on the Equator.
- The **Cocoa** is a tropical fruit tree that is native to the Amazon.
- Banana** and **Palms** are also found in the Amazon basin.
- Agriculture** is the main occupation in the Ganga Brahmaputra basin.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. True

F. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. The tropical and subtropical regions — a. The largest river in terms of volume
 2. The Amazon — b. The main occupation of people
 3. Yams — c. Tributaries of the Ganga
 4. Gandak, Gomti — d. Rich biodiversity
 5. Agriculture — e. Sweet potatoes

G. Give reasons :

- Ans.**
1. The climate of the tropical region is warm and humid. The rainfall is heavy. This is the reason, why thick vegetation is found in the tropical region.
 2. The soil in the Ganga plains is fertile and temperature is not so high, and it is good enough for the rice, wheat, maize and other food crops cultivation. Monsoon is the major source of water here. That is why agriculture is the main occupation in the Ganga plains.
 3. The Ganga– Brahmaputra Basin is one of the most fertile plains in the world. Here a variety of crops such as wheat, rice, jute, tea, maize, sugarcane etc. are grown. Also forests are found here in large numbers. This has in turn led to the development of many agro-based industries in these plains that used raw materials obtained from various crops growing in this basin.

H. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. The Amazon River basin is located in the continent of South America.
 2. The terrain in the Ganga-Brahmaputra Basin is both flat and even. The slope of the surface is quite even as compared to the nearby mountain areas. Due to the favourable conditions for agriculture, transportation and construction. The Ganga–Brahmaputra basins are thickly populated. It is for the same reason that mountain areas are thinly populated due to unfavorable conditions.
 3. The region has monsoon type of climate. Summers are hot and dry. Most of the rain takes place in monsoon season, i.e. from June to September. The rainfall is heavy in the Brahmaputra basin and in the eastern Ganga Basin. Western Ganga basin receives relatively less rainfall. Winters are cold and dry.
 4. Most of the people in the Ganga-Brahmaputra Basin live in the villages, where apart from agriculture many cottage and small-scale industries have been developed. The life-styles of the people living in the rural areas is improving and their incomes are also increasing.

I. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. Amazon rainforests are abundant with lush green plants. It is the world's largest tropical rainforest and covers much of northern South America. About 2/3 of the rainforests lie in Brazil. Amazon basin where the rainforests are found, also contain about 2/3 of world's fresh water supply. Trees of these forests have height of 40 metres and form a thick canopy. In the upper canopy, even saplings of different plants also grow. Orchids, bromeliads grow as plant parasites. These canopies, however, prevent sunshine from reaching the floor. So, the ground remains dark and damp.
 2. Agriculture is the main occupation of the people living in the northern plains of India. Paddy, wheat, maize, sorghum, gram, millets, sugarcane, jute, cotton, etc. are grown in this region on a large scale. Subsistence farming is very common in the region. Only jute, tea, sugarcane oil seeds, etc. are grown for commercial purposes. These are the commercial crops of the Ganga-Brahmaputra basin. Due to the availability of irrigation and mechanisation, many big farms have also

been established in recent years for growing rice on commercial scale. In Assam and Bengal, tea estates were established by the British. In Bihar and Assam, silk worms are reared to produce good quality silk.

9. Life in the Temperate Grasslands

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The temperate grasslands of North America is the Prairies and of South Africa is the Veld.
2. Ranches are large farms, especially in the western US and Canada, where cattle or other animals are bred.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. c. 3. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The Prairies in North America are located in **Canada and the USA**.
2. **Maize** is the major crop in the Prairies.
3. **Silos** are tall steel structures used for storing grains.
4. A ridge called the **Witwatersrand** runs through the high veld.
5. **Johannesburg** is the biggest city of the veld.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Bison → b. Protected animal
2. Kudu → b. Protected animal
3. Johannesburg → c. Veld
4. Chinook → d. Prairies
5. Winnipeg → e. Animal

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Grassland is typical regions of moderate rainfall. The two categories of grasslands found in the world are tropical grasslands and temperate grasslands.
2. The temperate grasslands of, North America are called the 'Granaries of the world' due to the huge surplus of wheat production.
3. The occupation of the people of the South African grasslands is cattle or sheep rearing.
4. Prairies, also called grasslands, are one of the main types of natural vegetation or biomass (others include forest, desert shrub, and tundra). Prairies are almost tree-less. Areas which receive rainfall of over 50 cm are suitable for farming as the soil is fertile there and trees such as willows, alders and poplars are found there. The major crop of this area is maize, other crops including potatoes, soya bean, cotton and alfalfa are also grown. Whereas in areas receiving very little or unreliable rainfall, grasses are short and sparse. These areas are suitable for cattle rearing. Bison or the American buffalo is the most important animal of this region. It nearly got extinct due to its indiscriminate hunting and is now a protected species. The other animals found in this region are rabbits, coyotes, gophers and prairie dog.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The word veld means field in Dutch. It is the name given to the temperate grasslands of South Africa.

Location

These grasslands are located in the eastern part of the plateau of South Africa. They lie between the Drakensberg Mountains in the south-east and the Kalahari Desert in the north-west.

Climate

Due to the high altitude of the plateau and the surrounding oceans, the veld enjoys a moderate climate. Summers are short and warm, winters are long and cool. Rainfall is low and it takes place mostly in the summer. The winters remain dry with some occasional frost. Rainfall decreases from east to west, where the veld merges with the Kalahari Desert. Droughts occur frequently in the veld.

2. In the Canadian part of the prairies, native Indians roamed in the vast plains. When the Canadian government introduced a number of negotiations with the native inhabitants, many people from eastern Canada and British isle came to settle here. These people are very hardworking. They are fully tainted to use different types of machines in their work.

Climate

The summers are warm with temperatures of around 20°C, while in winter 20°C has been recorded in Winnipeg, Canada. In winters a thick blanket of snow covers this region. The annual rainfall is moderate and is ideal for the growth of grass. A local wind “Chinook” blows here.

3. The prairies are temperate grasslands of North America. There are tall grass, upto two metres high, dominates, the landscape in prairies. Prairies are regions of flat, gently sloping or hilly land. The prairies are bound by the Rocky Mountains in the West and the Great Lakes in the East. The climate in prairies is of continental type with extreme temperatures. Annual rainfall in prairies is moderate. Prairies are mainly known for the mass food.

The Veld are temperate grasslands of South Africa. Here vegetation cover is sparse. Velds are plateaus ranging from 600 m to 1600 m height. It is bound by the Drakensburg Mountains on the east. To its west lies the Kalahari desert. They have a mild climate. The velds receive rainfall mainly in the summer months from November to February. The velds are known for cattle rearing and mining.

10. Life in the Deserts

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. There are two types of deserts found in the world—hot desert (Sahara) and cold desert (Ladakh).
2. The oasis of Sahara have permanent settlements. Due to the availability of water people grow vegetables, date palms and crops like rice, wheat, cotton, etc.

3. Ladakh is situated in the eastern part of the state of Jammu and Kashmir in India.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. b. 3. c. 4. a.

C. Correct the following sentences :

- Ans.** 1. The **hot** deserts are found in the tropical regions.
2. The climate in Sahara desert is **hot and dry**.
3. Ladakh lies to the **north** of the Greater Himalayas mountains.
4. Ladakh is often referred to as the **Moonland**.
5. **Yak** is the most useful animal for the people of **Ladakh**.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Desert have **extremes** of temperature.
2. **Reg** are the extensive areas of pebbles and gravel.
3. The **Tuaregs** and the **Bedouins** are the most well known among the nomadic tribes.
4. **Pangong Tso** is a huge lake in Ladakh.
5. Tourism is an important **economic** activity in Ladakh.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. False

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. A desert may be defined as a region which generally receives less than 25 cm of rainfall in a year.
2. The people living in the Sahara Desert grow crops like rice, wheat, barley, beans, cotton etc.
3. The people produce goods such as leather coats, belts, caps, carpets, mats, water bottles, slippers, bags, purses and blankets. They also make exquisite artefacts and jewellery in silver.
4. **Climatic Conditions of Ladakh**

The climate is extremely cold and dry in Ladakh because of its high altitude. The air is thin so the freezing winds and burning hot sunlight can be felt intensely. In summers the day temperature is around zero degree and the night temperature is below 30°C. In winters the temperature remains below 40°C.

Willows, poplars, and fruits trees such as apples, apricots and walnuts are some of the trees that grow in Ladakh.

5. As the melting of snow is the main source of water in the Ladakh desert hence water is not a big problem for the native people. Therefore scattered patches of grasses and shrubs are found here for animals to graze. Yak, wild goats and wild sheep are the common animals which are found in this type of climate only. Yak's milk is used to make cheese and butter. The hair of the sheep and goat is used to make woollens. Birds like Robins, redstarts, Tibetan snowcock, raven and hoopoe are commonly seen here. Willows, poplars, and fruits trees such as apples, apricots and walnuts are some of the trees that grow in Ladakh.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Sahara is not entirely a sandy desert. Only about one-fourth of it is covered with vast stretches of sand known as erg. Shifting sand dunes are common here. There are extensive areas of pebbles and gravel

known as reg and also large areas of smooth, bare bedrocks known as hamada. These have been formed by the action of strong winds which blow away all the sand particles.

The land surface of the Sahara does not have uniform relief. Much of it is plain but there are a few mountain ranges and plateaus. Emi Koussi (3415 m) in the Tibesti Range is the highest peak. The Ahaggar is another important range. Sahara is dotted with several oases where water is available. Bilma and Kufra are some of the larger ones. The Nile and Niger rivers flow along the eastern and southern borders of the desert respectively. Lake Chad on the southern border is the only fresh water lake in this desert.

2. The Sahara desert is very rich in minerals. Algeria has huge deposits of **iron ore** and **manganese**. Mauritania has lots of **copper ore**, while **uranium** is found across the Sahara, with major reserves in Niger. The Sahara has huge resources of coal, oil and natural gas too. Coal is found in Morocco. Major oil reserves are found in Algeria, western parts of Egypt, and north-eastern Libya, with minor deposits in Tunisia, Morocco, Chad, and Niger. The major fields of natural gas are found in Algeria, while minor fields are there in Egypt, Libya, and Tunisia. While oil and gas extraction have brought technology and communications to some parts of the Sahara, there has not been much development in the desert. The coastal areas are developing at a faster pace. Most of the people in the Sahara still do not live in cities and lead a nomadic life.
3. People of Ladakh are either Muslims or Buddhists. The ingenious people of Ladakh use surrounding water resources to create a prosperous agricultural base for the region. The people of Ladakh cultivate fruits and vegetables. They use a number of techniques for water conservation and irrigation methods. These techniques include melting of snow, storing water and a number of indigenous drip irrigation techniques. The indigenous techniques include bamboo drip irrigation system, pitcher drip irrigation and kuhls. The technique of Kuhls involve constructing water channels along the hill gradient in conformity with the gravity. The people of Ladakh are expert in using smoke for protecting fruit crops. In this technique, plants are exposed to smoke to protect the fruits from frost injury.

1. When, Where and How?

HISTORY

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. The Medieval Period means the period that comes between the Ancient and the Modern Period.
 2. Cholas, Khaljis, Tughluqs, Mughals.
 3. Monuments, inscriptions, coins and paintings are some of the archaeological sources.

B. Tick (✓) the correct sources :

Ans. 1. a. 2. b. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Correct the underlined words :

Ans. 1. Eighth 2. Medieval
3. South 4. Timur
5. Damingo Paes

D. Fill in the blanks :

Ans. 1. The first part of the medieval period covers the **Rajput Kingdoms**.
2. The institution of well-minted **currency** led to development of the country.
3. The women were adhere to the **Purdah** system.
4. **Coins and paintings** also throw light on developments during the medieval period.
5. **Rajatarangini** tells us about the history of kings who ruled over Kashmir.

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. False

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. The **Medieval Period** means the period that comes between the Ancient and the Modern Period. The Medieval Period in India, generally, begins from eighth century CE. It stretches from eighth to twelfth century CE and further from thirteenth century CE to eighteenth century CE. The first part covers the Rajput Kingdoms, and in the second part covers the Delhi Sultanate, the Mughals, the rise and fall of Vijayanagar and the Marathas.
2. The true Indian culture developed with the fusion of the Hindu and the Muslim cultural traits. What was produced during this period is still a common heritage.
3. The position of women in the society worsened. They were to adhere to the Purdah system which greatly restricted their freedom.
4. Archaeological and Literary sources.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. In the Medieval period (8th to 18th century) we find certain historical trends which differentiate it from the Ancient Period.

- About this period, sufficient historical material is available as compared to the Ancient Period.
There is no vagueness about the chronology.
- Most of the languages that we speak now, particularly Hindi and Urdu, developed during this period.
- The dress we wear and the food we eat, bear a clear impact of this period. Many of our social customs, traditions and beliefs have their origin in the Medieval Period.
- During this period, the true Indian culture developed with the fusion of the Hindu and the Muslim cultural traits. What was produced during this period is still a common heritage.
- The Bhakti and the Sufi Saints brought about a better understanding of the fundamental principles of Hinduism and Islam which resulted in a greater spirit of mutual harmony and tolerance.

- The institution of well-minted currency led to economic development of the country. There was a marked improvement in cultivation and great expansion in trade and commerce.
 - Attracted by the economic prosperity of India many European countries tried to establish direct trade relations with India.
 - However, the position of women in the society worsened. They were to adhere to the Purdah system which greatly restricted their freedom.
2. The information about medieval period is derived from two sources : **Archaeological** and **Literary**. The monuments constructed during this period hold a valuable ground till date.

Archaeological Sources

Monuments

Archaeological sources available to us include monuments, temples, coins, combs, ornaments and paintings. Many rulers in South India constructed temples like Brihadeeshwara temple, Lingaraja temple, Sun temple, Gangaikondacholapuram and so on. In monumental traces, we have mosques like Jama Masjid and Quwwat-ul-Islam; forts like Red Fort, Agra Fort and Amber Fort. Tombs like Taj Mahal and Humayun's Tomb; palaces like these at Jaisalmer, Jaipur and Jodhpur and minarets like Qutub Minar.

Inscriptions

Also, there are epigraphic sources containing inscriptions in stone and copper plates. They give us valuable information about rulers, their conquests, trade and prosperity.

Coins

Numismatics or the study of coins-gold and silver throw light on political events, reigning year and economic prosperity of the kingdom.

Paintings

Paintings are another major source of information which throws considerable light on the social, religions and political life of the people through its depictions. The miniature paintings developed under the Mughal rule tell us about the court life, methods of warfare, dress, jewellery, etc., of the rulers.

Literary Sources

These include chronicles, autobiographies (memoirs), biographies, royal 'farmans or decrees and state documents etc. The chronicles and memoirs of the rulers of the medieval period are mostly in Persian, Arabic and Turki. The famous original sources of the period are :

- (i) Tabaqat-i-Nasiri by Minhaj-us-Siraj is a detailed history of Muslim dynasties from the time of Ghori chiefs to the reign of Balban.
- (ii) Tarikhi-Alai by Amir Khusrau, the parrot of Hind, gives an account of the Khilji rulers.
- (iii) Zafarnamah is a history of Timur compiled by Sharf-ud-din.
- (iv) Ain-i-Akbari and Akbarnama, by Abul Fazl give a complete account of Akbar's reign and government.

Other important works of this period include Alberuni's Tehqiq-i-Hind,

Muntakhab-ul-Twarikh by Badauni and Humayun Nama by Gulbadan Begum.

Works in Sanskrit and other languages were also produced in this period. Vijayanagar kings in the south encouraged Sanskrit learning. Kalhana's Rajatarangini was a long Sanskrit poem telling the history of kings who ruled over Kashmir. He even criticised rulers. Chandabardai, the court poet wrote Prithviraj Raso in Hindi. Bhakti and Sufi saints composed songs and dohas in the language of the people. The Ramacharitamanas was written by Tulsidas and Sursagar by Surdas, the latter was in praise of Lord Krishna.

2. New Rules and Rulers

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Political development, new dynasties, exploits of famous Rajputs chiefs, Turkish invasions of India weakened the country.
2. Political powers, the Palas, the Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas, made Kanauj the test of their political powers.
3. Rajendra Chola assumed the title of 'Gangaikonda'. It means 'conqueror of the Ganga'.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c 2. a. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The **Pala** kingdom was established by Gopala.
2. **Vatsraja** was the Pratihara ruler who occupied Kanauj.
3. Prithviraj Chauhan was defeated by **Muhammad Ghori in 1192**
4. A Chola temple was also the centre of **economic, political and cultural** activities.

D. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The location of a city called Kanauj on the banks of Ganga in Uttar Pradesh meant that anyone who controlled Kanauj would be master of the Gangetic Valley. This prompted three powers, namely the Palas, the Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas to take control of this city. This struggle for Kanauj came to be known as the Tripartite struggle.
2. One of the best known rulers of this period is Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni, Afghanistan. He was the first Turkish invader who invaded India from the north-western part of India. He ruled from 997 to 1030 and extended control over parts of Central Asia, Iran and north-western part of the subcontinent.
3. A minor chiefly family known as Muttaraiyar held power in the Kaveri delta. They were subordinate to the Pallava kings of Kanchipuram. Vijayalaya, who belonged to the ancient chiefly family of the Cholas from Urayur, captured the delta from the Muttaraiyar in the middle of the ninth century. He built the town of Thanjavur and a temple of goddess Nisumbhasudini there.

The Chola empire expanded rapidly under his successors Rajaraja and his son Rajendra I. They expanded the Chola empire beyond South India to Sri Lanka, Java and Sumatra.

4. There was a remarkable agrarian expansion during the Chola period. This was made possible by two developments—the reclamation of a lot of barren lands for cultivation; and an extension of irrigation facilities. The temples took the lead in both aspects. The temples had a lot of money, obtained through donations, which was invested in agriculture. Most of the barren land that was cultivated was also controlled by the temples.

The growth of population during this period gave a further push to agricultural expansion. Since more people had to be fed, an increase in cropped area as well as better productivity became the primary concern of the rulers.

E. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Kanauj's Location on the banks of Ganga in Uttar Pradesh meant that anyone who controlled Kanauj would be master of the Gangetic valley, was the strategic importance of Kanauj.

The Palas, the pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas wanted to conquer Kanauj.

2. Prithviraj defeated Ghori in the First Battle of Tarain. Ghori escaped, while many of his soldiers were killed. He came again with a larger army and defeated Prithviraj in the Second Battle of Tarain, in 1192 CE.
3. Mahmud of Ghazni and Muhammad Ghori invaded India for different reasons. Mahmud of Ghazni was the first Turkish invader who invaded India from the north-western part of India. He raided the subcontinent almost every year to plunder the wealth from India. His later invasions were specifically directed to temple towns including that of Somnath, Gujarat as Indian temples were depositories of great wealth. Much of the wealth that Mahmud carried away was used to create a splendid capital city at Ghazni. But Mahmud failed as the founder of the Muslim empire in India. Permanent conquest of India was not his aim. He is not regarded as the founder of the Muslim empire in India. He was interested only in the wealth of India and not in founding an empire.

But Muhammad Ghori was not as great a military leader as Mahmud of Ghazni but he is regarded as the real founder of the Muslim empire in India. He did not feel content with merely defeating the Rajputs and plundering their territories. He annexed to his own empire whatever he conquered. Even when he was away from India, he left it to his generals to complete his work of conquests. In this way, he made his conquests more permanent.

4. **The main features of Chola Administration**

King and the ministers : The king was the head of the state. He discharged his duties and responsibilities with the help of ministers and other high officers. Apart from the ruler there was a ministerial council and an organized administrative staff. The ruler maintained close contact with the council of ministers and royal tours contributed to the

efficiency of the administration.

Revenue : Revenue was derived mainly from land and collected in kind, or in cash, or in both, by village assemblies. Land was possessed by in dividable and communities. The state's share of land revenue was fixed at 1/3 rd of the produce after an elalrorate, land survey in the time of Rajaraja I. There were periodical revisions of the classifications of land and of the assessment of land revenue. Failure to pay the land revenue involved sale of the land in question in clouding temple lands.

Army : The army consisted of elephants, cavalry and infantry. Attention was given to training and discipline of the cantonments. It was composed chiefly of karkallas (men with strong arms) or engender (spear wielders). The commanders enjoyed the rank of Nayaka senapati, or mauadandanayaka.

The smallest unit of administration was the village. There were three types of assemblies—the Ur, sabha and the Nagram, the 'Ur' was the assembly of common villagers, the 'Sabha' was the assembly of learned Brahmanas; and the 'Nagram' was the assembly of merchants, traders and artisans. The main functions of these assemblies were to collect taxes settle disputes as well as to look after the temples, irrigation works, cleanliness and sanitation, etc. These village assemblies were more or less like the Panchayats of today.

3. The Delhi Sultanate

Exercises

A. Answer these question orally :

- Ans.**
1. Chief Sadr was the head of matters related to religions.
 2. The Slave Dynasty was the first Muslim dynasty to rule India.
 3. Instead of shifting the government officials, Muhammad-bin-Tuglaq ordered all the people to move to Daulatabad. People suffered a lot in his long journey. A large number of people died on the way. People could not adjust in the new environment. That was the reason that his decision to shift his capital was a failure.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. c. 3. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

1. The Slave Dynasty lasted from **1206** to **1290**.
2. The **Slave Dynasty** was the first Muslim dynasty to rule India.
3. **Balban** adopted the Iranian theory of Kingship.
4. Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodi in the first battle of **Panipat** in **1526 CE**.
5. A large number of **slaves** were bought and sold in markets.

D. Write true or false :

1. True 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. True

E. Give reason :

1. One of the experiments taken by Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq was the transfer of capital from Delhi to **Devagiri** in 1327 CE and named it

Daulatabad. There was nothing wrong in it as with the expansion of empire, it was not possible to control from Delhi. He was of the view that it was a more central place to exercise control from here. Moreover, his kingdom will become safer against the attack of the Mongols. Instead of shifting the government officials, he ordered all the people to move to Daulatabad.

2. Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq was a learned man. He was a scholar of mathematics, philosophy, astronomy, logic, medicine and physical sciences. He was a poet and a good orator. He had a sharp memory. According to Ibn Batutah, Muhammad Tughlaq was, in fact, a great scholar but a strange man. He offended the orthodox ulema. That is why they called him 'A mixture of opposites.'
3. The administration of the Delhi sultanate was based on the personal ability of the sultans. As long as an able person was in the command of the administration, the system worked well. But when the sultan became a mere puppet in the sultanate. Thus, the reigns of successive weak rulers, led to the downfall of the Sultanate.

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. Qutb-ud-din was the founder of the Slave dynasty. He gave large sums of money in charity. Qutb-ud-din built two mosques—one in Delhi, called 'Quwwat-ul-Islam' and the other at Ajmer, called 'Arhai-Din-Ka-Jhompra'. He also started the construction of the 'Qutab Minar'. But due to his sudden death at Lahore, his successor, Iltutmish completed it.
 2. To strengthen the Delhi sultanate Balban brought about reforms in the internal administration. He enforced law and order and reorganised the army. He constructed roads and made arrangements for inter-state traffic. The judiciary was strengthened. He reformed the tax collection process. Provincial governors were frequently transferred.
 3. The Muslims regarded Feroz Shah as an ideal ruler. Feroz Shah started many schemes for the welfare of his subject—rest houses were built, charity department and employment bureaus were opened. He even set up a separate department for slaves. He did take measures to strengthen his rule but there occurred a general decline of the Sultanate within two decades of his death.
 4. The Turkish chief, Timur, the Lame, ruled over a vast empire in Central Asia. He attacked India in 1398 CE. In March-April, he conquered Punjab. He attacked Delhi in December 1398. He plundered the city. He ordered a general massacre. It continued for several days. Thousands of innocent people were killed and thousands were made prisoners. He ruined the city of Delhi. This weakened the Delhi Sultanate.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. Alauddin Khaji was a far better ruler than Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq, Alauddin took various steps like the regulation of markets, the control over nobles, recruitment of soldiers and invasions in various parts of India. All of these steps proved very successful and helped him to establish his authority over the administration. Nobody was dare to

challenge his authority. In the sharp contrast to this, Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq proved unsuccessful in all his plans. He was a learned man, but still could not execute well. He made his subjects suffered of his plans.

2. Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq transferred his capital from Delhi to Devagiri in 1327 CE and named it Daulatabad. There was nothing wrong in it as with the expansion of empire, it was not possible to control from Delhi. He was of the view that it was a more central place to exercise control from here. Moreover, his kingdom will become safer against attract of the Mongols. Instead of shifting the government officials, he ordered all people to move to Daulatabad. People suffered a lot in this long journey. A large number of people died on the way. People could not adjust in the new environment.

He introduced a token currency of copper coins in place of gold and silver coins. This copper form was to have the same value as the earlier coin. The sultan could not take any step to check forgery and the result was that people began to mint coins in their houses. As a result, foreign trade began to suffer. The state treasury was thus, flooded with forged coins.

He know that the doab region between the Ganga and Yamuna yielded a large produce. This prompted him to increase the revenue of his area. But the region at this time was passing through a famine. The lands had become barren and most of the people died of starvation.

3. The Turkish chief, Timur, the Lame, ruled over a vast empire in Central Asia. He had a great desire to obtain huge wealth from India and also to spread Islam. Knowing that the Indian rulers were weak, he attacked India in 1398 CE. In March-April, he conquered Punjab. He attacked Delhi in December 1398. He plundered the city. He ordered a general massacre. It continued for several days. Thousands of innocent people were killed and thousands were made prisoners. He ruined the city of Delhi. On his return journey he looted a number of cities. Wherever he went, he destroyed everything. He went back to Central Asia with his loot of enormous wealth and slaves.

4. **Administration Under The Delhi Sultanate**

The Muslim state was a theocracy. The Sultan ruled in the name of God and Islam was the religion of the state.

Central and Provincial Administration : The Delhi Sultanate was headed by the sultan who was the most important person in the empire. He was helped by ministers.

The income, expenditure, revenue collection were handled by the wazir. Some people were given both military and civilian posts in the administration. They were called nobles.

Division of Empire : The sultanate was divided in Subas or provinces. Each province was divided into Shigs which of were further divided into paraganas and paragana into villages. The paraganas was headed by amil.

Economic tools : Alauddin Khalfi fixed the prices of basic utility items in order to keep his soldiers and people happy. No one could charge

higher price. If anyone found doing so, he was punished severely.

Society : The ruling class consisting of the nobles formed the topmost section of society. Hindu caste system influenced the Muslims as well, and there were distinctions between various groups. The peasants lived a life of poverty as they had to pay high taxes.

Iqta System : The kingdom was divided into a number of tracks known as the Iqtas. The Iqtas were granted to leading Turkish nobles who were called Muqtas or Iqtadars. The Iqtas were not hereditary and could be transferred from one Iqtadar to another.

4. The Creation of an Empire

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Akbar
2. Humayun was defeated by Sher Shah Suri at Chausa in 1529 and at Kanauj in 1540 which forced him to flee to Iran.
3. Abul Fazl

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Correct the following statements :

- Ans.** 1. Babur defeated **Ibrahim Lodi** in the First Battle of Panipat.
2. Babur was succeeded by **Humayun**.
3. Sher Shah ruled for **five** years.
4. Akbar followed the policy of religious **tolerance**.
5. Aurangzeb spent the **last 26 years** of his reign in the **Deccan**.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Babur** was the first Mughal emperor.
2. Sher Shah was an excellent **administrator**.
3. **Din-i-Ilahi** was the religion founded by Akbar.
4. **Rajputs** were the most powerful rivals of Mughals in north India.
5. The tenure of a subadar was around **three** years.

E. Write true or false :

1. True 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. False

F. Match the following :

- | | | |
|---------------|---|---------------------|
| 1. Sulh-i-kul | → | a. Alamgir |
| 2. Sher Shah | → | b. Khurram |
| 3. Shah Jahan | → | c. Peace with all |
| 4. Aurangzeb | → | d. Jahangir |
| 5. Nur Jahan | → | e. Grand Trunk Road |

G. Answer the following questions in brief:

1. A mansab mean three things : (1) It determined the status or rank of the holder or the mansabdar, (2) It fixed the salary of the holder, (3) It specified the number of sawars or contingents with horses and equipments, which the mansabdar had to maintain.
2. Akbar followed the policy of religious tolerance and established

friendly relations with the Rajputs in particular and the Hindus in general.

During the 1570's he also built a building called Ibadat Khana at Agra to hold discussions with the religious leaders where views were exchanged freely. He also introduced the policy of sulh-i kul (peace for all; tolerance among people of different faiths). Debates with religious scholars helped Akbar in framing the idea of sulh-i-kul 'universal peace'. By using such a policy of tolerance Akbar was able to formulate governance guidelines which were based on a system of ethics. For this reason, Akbar is called Akbar the great.

3. **Jahangir**, Prince Salim became the ruler in 1605. After the death of Akbar the military campaigns started by Akbar were continued by him. In the south he captured the Ahmadnagar fort. In the north-west, Jahangir lost Qandahar to the Persians. This was a major loss of trade routes.

Jahangir married Mehrunnisa in 1611 and gave her the title **Nur Jahan**. He struck silver coins bearing his own title on one side and the name of the Queen Begum, Nur Jahan on the other side. She remained extremely loyal and supportive to the monarch.

He also maintained a good relationship with the Rajputs. He followed the principle of sulh-i-kul established by Akbar. Jahangir died in 1627.

4. After Jahangir's death, Khurram succeeded to the Mughal throne as **Shah Jahan** in 1628 CE. In 1628 CE, Raja Jujhar Singh of Bundelkhand revolted but he defeated. He revolted again in 1635 CE and was killed. There were three major states in the Deccan, i.e. Ahmednagar, Bijapur and Golconda. These states created trouble for the Mughal Empire off and on. Prince Aurangzed was made the Subedar (Viceroy) of the Deccan. As a result, Ahmednagar was brought under the Mughal control in 1633. Bijapur and Golconda accepted Mughal supremacy in 1636.

Shah Jahan also had trouble with the Portuguese because they still practised piracy. The Mughal armies acted against them and cleared them out of Hugli.

5. Those who joined Mughal service were appointed as mansabdars. The masabdars of higher rank were given jagirs in lieu of cash wagers. The revenue from the jagirs were used in maintaining the standing army for the emperor.

H. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. Akbar's reign can be divided into three periods as far as the conquests and expansion of the empire are concerned.

(i) **1556-1570** : Akbar gradually asserted his independence and freed himself from the domination of his guardian Bairam Khan. During this period, Akbar took over Malwa and parts of Central India. He also captured the forts of Chittor and Ranthambhor. Jodhpur had been conquered earlier.

(ii) **1570-1585** : During this phase, Akbar conquered Gujarat, Bengal,

Bihar and Orissa. The rich parts of Gujarat and Bengal brought immense profit to the Mughals.

(iii) **1585-1605** : Akbar further expanded his empire in the North-West by capturing Kashmir, Kabul and Quandhar. In the Deccan, he conquered Berar, Khandesh and Ahmadnagar.

2. Humayun divided his inheritance according to the will of his father and equally distributed the province among his brothers. The ambitions of his brother Mirza Kamran weakened Humayun's cause against Afghan competitors. He was defeated by **Sher Shah Suri** at Chausa in 1529 and at Kanauj in 1540 which forced him to flee to Iran. He received the help from Safavid Shah to capture Delhi again in 1555. He died the next year.
3. Akbar's liberal religious views and his marriage with the Rajput princes influenced his religious outlook. He used to hold talks with the leaders of various religions. Marriage of Akbar with a Kachhawaha princess, daughter of the Rajput ruler of Amber is an example of Mughal marriages with Rajputs.

During the 1570s he also built a building called Ibadat Khana at Agra to hold discussions with the religious leaders where views were exchanged freely. He also introduced the policy of *sulh-i kul* (peace for all; tolerance among people of different faiths). Debates with religious scholars helped Akbar in framing the idea of *sulh-i-kul* 'universal peace'. By using such a policy of tolerance Akbar was able to formulate governance guidelines which were based on a system of ethics.

Akbar was interested in the religion and social customs of different people and found that all religions taught similar ideology. Thus, he incorporated the principles of all the religions to found a new faith which he named Din-i-Illahi. But sadly '*Din-i-Illahi*' did not attract many converts and it ended with the death of Akbar.

4. Babur and Humayun could not concentrate on establishing a definite system or pattern in administration. By the end of Akbar's reign, we find the establishment of elaborate offices with specialised functions assigned to the heads of officers. The rulers and regulations guiding both the public and private conduct of the officers had been fixed. The appointment promotion, and termination of these officials were subject to the ruler's personal preference and whims.

5. Monumental Architecture

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. Nagara was style of temple building in the North India, during the medieval period.
 2. Minars, Mosques, Gardens and Tanks
 3. On the walls of Diwan-i-khas.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

1. b. 2. c. 3. b. 4. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **The Kashi Vishvanath temple** and **Dashavatar temples** are examples of north Indian styles of temples.
2. The Khajuraho temples were built by the **Chandellas**.
3. The construction of Qutab Minar was completed by **Iltutmish**.
4. **Babur** expressed his interest in laying out formal gardens.
5. The **Taj Mahal** is the most famous monument built by Shah Jahan.

D. Write true or false :

1. False 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. True

E. Match the following :

- | | | |
|---------------|---|--------------------|
| 1. Akbar | → | a. Shalimar Bagh |
| 2. Humayun | → | b. Fatehpur Sikri |
| 3. Shah Jahan | → | c. Humayun's Tomb |
| 4. Jahangir | → | d. Badshahi Masjid |
| 5. Aurangzeb | → | e. Taj Mahal |

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. In the early eleventh century, Indian temple architecture was classified under three different styles :
- (i) **The North Indian Style or Nagara :** Nagara style temples are the groups of temples at Khajuraho in Madhya Pradesh and Bhubaneswar in Odisha. The Kashi Vishvanath temple at Varanasi and Dashavatar temples are examples of north Indian style of temples.
 - (ii) **The South Indian Style or Dravida :** Dravida style temples are the Shore Temples in Mamallapuram and the Meenakshi temple in Madurai.
 - (iii) The amalgamation of north and south Indian style is called the Vesara.
2. The **Rajarajeshvara Temple** at Thanjavur had the tallest shikhara, a tower-like structure on top of a temple.
3. Quwwat-ul-Islam Mosque in Delhi, Adhai Din ka Jhanpra in Ajmer, Qutub Minar in Delhi, Alai Darwaza in Delhi, Fort city in Siri in Delhi, Bara Gumbad, Shish Gumbad and the Tomb of Sikandar Lodi are some of the monuments built during the sultanate period.
4. The formal gardens that were placed with rectangular walled enclosures and divided into four quarters by artificial channels were called chahar baghs.
They were so called because of their symmetrical division into quarters. Some of the most beautiful chahr baghs were constructed by Jahangir and Shah Jahan in Kashmir, Agra and Delhi.
5. Red Fort, made of Red, sandstone, is famous for its special buildings—Diwan-i-aam or Hall of Public audience and Diwan-i-Khas or Hall of private audience. The famous lines engraved on the walls of Diwan-i-Khas "If there is a paradise on earth it is this, it is this, it is this", truly depicts the spirit of this magnificent monument. This is where the famous peacock throne was placed.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. Kings built forts and palaces for a variety of reasons. By building forts and palaces they used to stamp their authority on other people. Forts and palaces were used by them as their administrative centres where they used to hold their court and meet visitors from all around their kingdoms and other kingdoms also. The grandeur of the palace, the more powerful the king was believed to be. All these factors prompted kings and emperors of the middle period to build majestic forts and palaces.
 2. Akbar's reign saw the fusion of Persian, Central Asian and Indian styles of architecture and the creation of a new style. This can be seen in the buildings at Fatehpur Sikri, the new capital that Akbar built near Agra. The buildings here, such as the Buland Darwaza, Panch Mahal, palace of Birbal, Jodha Bai's Palace, Diwan-i-Khas, Diwan-i-Aam, etc. are built of red sandstone. The tomb of Shaikh Salim Chishti is also located at Fatehpur Sikri. It is built of white marble. Akbar also built forts, palaces and tombs. The Agra Fort is an impressive structure. In it is the beautiful Jahangiri Mahal. Akbar also focused on Chahar Bagh. He took the example of Timur.
 3. The Taj Mahal was built by Shah Jahan as a mausoleum for his beloved wife Mumtaz Mahal. The perfect beauty of Taj can be seen in its massive dome, four slender minarets, delicate marble screens, and fine floral designs. In the typical Mughal style, it is also placed in the midst of a formal garden. The construction of Taj Mahal—a World heritage site took 22 years. 22,000 labourers and 1000 elephants were used to build the monument. It was built entirely out of white marble at the cost approximately 32 million rupees. It is one of the seven wonders of the World.
 4. It was during Shah Jahan's time, that Mughal architecture reached its excellence. Use of marble and decorating the walls with floral designs made of semi-precious stones were introduced. This method of decoration is called pietra dura. Shah Jahan used this decorative style in the Taj Mahal, which is truly a jewel in the art heritage of the world.

6. Towns, Traders and Craftsmen

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. Ajmer Sharif, Amarnath, Badrinath, Kedarnath, Mecca.
 2. Iron objects, jewellery, crafts goods, etc. were the important items of manufacture in India.
 3. Surat is located in Gujarat.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. During the **Mughal** rule, the urbanisation of India received further encouragement.

- Ajmer developed under **Chauhans** and **Mughals**.
- Hampi** and **Surat** were both commercial and port towns.
- The important trading communities of Hampi were **Moors**, **Chettis** and **Portuguese**.
- Masulipatnam** was the British East India Company's first trading port on the Coromandel Coast.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True

E. Match the following :

- | | | |
|-----------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Bidri | → | a. Kalamkari technique |
| 2. Pilgrim town | → | b. Engraved work in copper and silver |
| 3. Masulipatnam | → | c. Gate to Mecca |
| 4. Agra | → | d. Banaras |
| 5. Surat | → | e. Typical administrative Mughal town |

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
- Hampi, Surat, Masulipatnam
 - Pilgrims also gave huge donations to temples. This wealth was used by temple authorities to finance their trade and banking. Temples provided important places of settlement. Priests, workers, artisans and traders settled in these towns. That was the reason towns grew around temples.
 - The trading towns were quite different from other towns. In these towns the main activity that was going was trade. The people were depended on trade for their livelihood. The only purpose of setting up of these towns was to benefit trade and commerce related activities.
 - Surat is also called the gate to Mecca because many pilgrim ships set sail from here.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Administrative Towns :** The administrative towns obviously functioned primarily as seats of governance. The Mughal Empire towns like Delhi, Agra, Lahore, Thanjavur come under this category. These towns were built along with the temples. Kings used to hold court in this mandapas and would also issue orders to their subordinates. There were quarters also for the army personnel, These towns were full of markets selling grains, species, cloth and jewellery. There was proper arrangement of communication and transportation. Water from wells and tanks was supplied to the city through channels. Most of the administrative towns had some sort of a fortification wall with one or more gates.

Commercial or Port Towns : The commercial and port towns came into prominence as a result of product produced in that regions, or because of nearness of ports and trading centres. The Mughal empire towns like Patna and Ahmedabad fall under this category. These towns grew into trade and industrial centres which in twin led to the general prosperity. In these types of towns markets were properly laid and shops were found on both sides of the main roads. Pahargauj was a wholesale market for grains.

Crafts Towns : The concentration of crafts towns was mainly found to the administrative seats where the kings and nobles stayed. Craftspersons played a crucial role in the making of luxury goods for kings and nobles and adorning of temples with gold, silver, alloy work, and textile and wood products. Skilled craftsmen were of vast importance of the medieval towns. Major craft centres which developed in response to inter regional trade were Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu.

2. People from distant parts used to visit Surat during those days because :
It was the gateway to west Asia.
 - They came here to purchase cotton textiles, textiles with their gold lace border.
 - It was also famous for its Zari textiles which had a huge market in west Asia, Africa and Europe.
 - However, Surat began to decline towards the end of the seventeenth century due to the following reasons :
Loss of markets and productivity due to the decline of the Mughal empire.
 - Control of the sea routes by the Portuguese.
 - Competition from Bombay where the English East India Company shifted its headquarters in 1668.
3. **The two court towns of Mughal India : Lahore :** It was the capital of Akbar between 1585. It also had a huge fort. Monserrette writes that Lahore was “not second to any city in Europe or Asia”. It was also a centre of handicrafts production. It was the distribution centre of Kashmiri carpets and shawls. The travellers have spoken about the riches of Lahore and considered it as an important city of trade.
Agra : It was the seat of royal authority during the reign of Akbar. Agra was much bigger than Delhi. Abul Fazl mentions that the Agra Fort, made of red sandstone, contained more than 500 masonry structures. It very much impressed the travellers who visited it. Cotton and silk-weaving was practised in Agra.
4. Hampi was located in Karnataka on the banks of the river Tungabhadra. The founder was Harihara, who established the Vijaynagar kingdom in 1336. The site of Hampi was spectacular, a city curved out of low lying hills and massive boulders. Thus, this site was chosen as it was protected by river Tungabhadra. This site consisted of elaborately constructed water channels which helped in irrigating the land with setting of this kingdom many temple towns which became centres of trade and manufacture. Hampi is known for its monuments. No mortar or cementing agent was used in the construction work. They also had well-planned orchards and gardens. In the 15th and 16th centuries, it bustled with commercial activity. Moors (the Muslim merchants), Chettis and agents of the European merchants flocked the markets of Hampi. It was also the centre of cultural activities.

7. Tribes, Nomads and Settled Communities

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Tribal societies were based on socio-economical equality. The entire resources were considered as the collective property.
2. Madhya Pradesh, eastern Maharashtra and Chhattisgarh.
3. The Banjaras' caravans were called **tanda**.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. b. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. A tribal group owned land and cattle **collectively**.
2. **Ahoms and Nagas** were a powerful tribe in the north-east.
3. The **Akbarnama** mentions that Garha Katanga had 70,000 villages.
4. The tribal people who earned their livelihood from agriculture, hunting, gathering and herding were called **tribes**.
5. The Ahoms migrated to the **Brahmaputra** region from Burma or Myanmar.

D. Write true or false :

1. True 2. False 3. False 4. False 5. False

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

1. Some powerful tribes are : Langhas and Arghuns in Multan and Sind; Balochis in the north-west; Gaddis in Western Himalayas; Nagas, Ahoms in north-eastern region; Kolis, Berads in Maharashtra highlands, Karnalaka and Gujarat; Koragas, Vetars, Maravars, in the south; Bhil across western and central India; Gonds in Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra and Andhra Pradesh.
2. The Banjaras were an important group of graziers who are still found in many villages of Punjab, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra etc. In search of new pastures, they moved over long distances. In exchange for food and fodder, they sold the ploughing cattle and a variety of other goods.
In fact, the Banjaras were the most important trader-nomads. Their caravans were called **tanda**. They carried grains from the rural areas and sold it in towns and cities. Sometimes rulers like Alauddin Khalji used them to carry grains to the city market. There are references to show that they transported food grains for the Mughal army during their military campaigns.
3. The Akbarnama mentioned that the Gond kingdom of Garha Katanga had 70,000 villages. There were several clans each having its own ruler. The administration of Gonds was centralised. Each kingdom was divided into Garhs. Each Garh was controlled by a particular Gond clan. It was further divided into 84 villages called Chaurasi. The Chaurasi was subdivided into barhots of 12 villages each.
4. **New Castes and Hierarchies**
Changing nature of Tribal Society after being organised into a state, tribal societies gradually got divided into unequal social classes. The

leading families joined the ruling class, while the others joined the lower jatis. Specialised artisans like smiths, carpenters and masons, were also recognised as separate jatis by the Brahmanas.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. The people who were lived in distinct groups in Indian society called the tribal people. They lived in clans led by tribal chiefs. Each tribe had its own laws, ruler and traditions to be followed and practiced. These tribal groups survived by hunting, food gathering and by doing shifting cultivation. Unlike the Hindu society, tribes had no caste system there was socio-economic equality in a tribal community. A tribal group owned land, cattle and other moveable properties collectively. Thus, tribal communities were based on sharing and mutual dependence. They carried grains from the rural areas and sold it in towns and cities and earned their income.
2. **Gonds** are sometimes referred by their tribal dialect Gondi. They practise shifting cultivation. Even today they live in the territory spread over modern day Madhya Pradesh, eastern Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, Northern Andhra Pradesh and Western Odisha. The Gonds had formed their own kingdom even before the Turkish invasions. They ruled in about tenth century in the forested region of Narmada valley. The Gonds rose when Delhi Sultanate declined. The Akbarnama mentioned that the Gond kingdom of Garha Katanga had 70,000 villages. There were several clans each having its own ruler. The administration of Gonds was centralised. Each kingdom was divided into Garhs. Each Garh was controlled by a particular Gond clan. It was further divided into 84 villages called Chaurasi. The Chaurasi was subdivided into barhots of 12 villages each. There were two or more kingdoms in Deograh—Nagpur region, Chanda-Sirpur in the south and Wardha towards the west. Jabalpur in Madhya Pradesh was one of the major centres of Gond power. The Gonds had also established close ties with the Chandela ruling clans. The Gond kingdom in Gondwana in southeastern Madhya Pradesh was famous during the period from fifteenth century to mid-eighteenth century. They had maintained their independence both during the Sultanate rule and later under Mughals. Emergence of large states changed the nature of Gond.
3. Many large tribes flourished in different parts of the subcontinent. They usually lived in forests, hills, deserts and places difficult to reach. In fact they were found in almost every region of the subcontinent. Tribal people were found in almost all regions of the subcontinent. Some of the powerful tribes, whose influence extended over a large area were Khokhar in Punjab. Later Gokkhors became more important, so much so that Kamal Khan Gakkar was made a mansabdar by Akbar. In Multan and Sind, Langhas and Arghuns had spread their influence over a large area. Balochis were a powerful tribe in the north west. In western Himalayas lived a shepherd tribe Goddis. In the north-eastern region lived the Nagas, Ahoms and many others. The Chera tribe in present day Bihar and Jharkhand had emerged as a powerful tribe in the 12th

century. Under Aurangzeb, Mughal forces captured many chero fortresses. The Mundas and Santhals were other important tribes that lived here and also in Odisha and Bengal.

The Maharashtra Highlands and Karnataka were the home of the Kolis, Berads and many others. Kolis also lived in Gujrat. In the South, there was tribal population of Koragas, vetars, Maravars and Many others. The large part of the Bhil tribe society spread across western and central India. The Gonds were found in many states of India like Cuhattishgarh, Madhya Pradehs, Maharashtra and Andhra Pradesh.

4. The Ahoms, a tribal group from Eastern India, controlled parge parts of the Brahmaputra valley. They Ahoms migrated to the Brahmaputra region from Burma or Myamar in the 13th century. The Ahoms fought with the rulers of Bengal for the control over the Brahmaputra valley. They even resisted the Mughals and their military expanded into Mughal territory. Though Mughals defected the Ahoms, they could not rule over Ahom territory for long. The Ahoms could offer military resistance to their opponents because they know the use of firearms and were capable of making gun powder and even cannons. The tribal characteristics of the Ahoms can be seen from the way their society was divided into clans or Khels. All decisions related to the community were taken by the clan. Ahoms gradually adopted the Vaishnav faith that prevailed in the Brahmaputra valley. The Ahom kings granted land to the Brahmins and to the temples. But at the same time, the Ahoms continued to worship their own tribal Gods. The Ahoms kept complete records of their rule. They also were great patrons of cultural activities. Important literary works in sanskrit were translated into local languages. The example of the Ahoms also proved that tribal power could also become strong enough to assert their identity.

8. Popular Beliefs and Religious Debates

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The means of Bhakti is belief or devotion.
2. The Sufis were Muslim or Islamic Mystics.
3. Guru Nanak Dev was the first Sikh Guru.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. a. 3. a. 4. c.

C. Rewrite these statements correctly :

- Ans.** 1. The Nayanars were the worshippers of Shiva.
2. The Lingayat Movement originated in Karnataka in the 12th century CE.
3. 'Krishna Bhakti' is central theme of all the works of Surdas.
4. The Sufis were organised into 12 Silsilahs.
5. The followers of Kabir came to be known as Kabirpanthis.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. It is possible to receive the grace of God through **Bhakti**.

2. **The Sufis** bought the Chishti silsila to India.
3. Shankara was the teacher of the concept of **Advaita**.
4. **Ramanuja** founded the Vaishnava sect.
5. Khalsa was formed by **Guru Gobind Singh** in 1699.

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. False

F. Match the following :

Ans.

1. Adi Shankaracharya	→	a. Founder of the Vaishnava Sect
2. Ramanuja	→	b. Composed Hanuman Chalisa
3. Lord Vitthal	→	c. The concept of Advaita
4. Tulsidas	→	d. Weaver by profession
5. Kabir	→	e. A form of Lord Vishnu

G. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. The Alvars emphasised ardent love for Shiva and Vishnu as means of attainment of salvation. Around 12 Alvars and 63 Nayanars had started this movement in the Tamil region. All of them came from divergent backgrounds like potters, traders, untouchables, brahmanas and local chiefs. Some of the popular saints of this group were Appar, Sambandar, Periyalyar and Hammalvar.
 2. Some of the popular among saints were Janeshwar, Namdev, Eknath and Tukaram and women saints like Sakkubai.

Teachings of Saints of Maharashtra

- They were strong and outspoken and were from different social classes.
 - They focused on the Vitthal (a form of Vishnu) in temple in Pandharpur whom they identified with Lord Krishna.
 - They advocated that God resides in the hearts of all people and taught the value of God's name, love and brotherhood.
 - They rejected the idea of all forms of ritualism, social differences based on birth, renunciation (leaving their families) and preferred to live with their families like other persons and serve human beings.
3. Some great sufi saints of central Asia were Ghazzali, Rumi and Sadi, Saent Moin-ud-din Chieshti, Faredhddin,
 4. According to legends, Kabir was the son of a brahman widow who abandoned him after his birth and he was brought up in the house of a Muslim weaver. He too became a weaver but while living in Benaras, he came in contact with Hindu and Muslim saints.

Kabir said that there is only one God whom he called by several names such as Rama, Hari, Govinda, Allah, Sain, Sahib etc. He rejected idol worship, rituals, and pilgrimages. The mission of Kabir was to preach a religion of love which could unite all castes and creeds.

H. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. The greatest proponents of Bhakti in South India were the Nayanars (worshippers of Shiva) and the Alvars (worshippers of Vishnu). The Nayanars and the Alvars emphasised ardent love for Shiva and Vishnu as means of attainment of salvation. Around 12 Alvars and 63 Nayanars

had started this movement in the Tamil region. All of them came from divergent backgrounds like potters, traders, untouchables, brahmanas and local chiefs. Some of the popular saints of this group were Appar, Sambandar, Periyalvar and Hammalvar.

2. The Silsilah was led by a Sufi saint who lived in their abodes or hospices, called Khanqah along with their disciples. Devotees of all classes from the ordinary people to the upper class nobility and even royalty regularly came to these Khanqahs. In these Khanqahs, there were open kitchens on langars. Khanqahs were open to all. When the pir or the Sufi saint who was the head of the Khanqah died, his grave would become a dargah and a centre of pilgrimage.
3. Guru Nanak was born in Talwandi (Nankana Sahib in Pakistan). He established a centre at Kartarpur (now called Dera Baba Nanak) on the river Ravi. He travelled widely before settling at Dera Baba Nanak. He emphasised the importance of the worship of one God who was formless. He insisted that caste, gender and creed was irrelevant for attaining salvation. His idea of liberation meant pursuit of active life with commitment of social service. His followers ate from the common kitchen (langar). The sacred space created by him was called dharmshala, now known as Gurudwara.

9. The Making of Regional Culture

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Manipravalam is a combination of two languages— Sanskrit and the other regional language (here, Malayalam).
2. Rajasthan was called Rajputana by the Britishers in the 19th century.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. c.

C. Cancel out the wrong word :

- Ans.** 1. The Purushottama Jagannath temple is erected at (Puri/~~Amritsar~~).
2. Rajasthan was called (~~Brahmadesh~~/Rajputana) by the British.
3. Kathak is a (classical/~~folk~~) dance form.
4. The Vishnupur temple is located in the (Narmana/~~Bankura~~) district.

D. Fill in the blanks :

1. **Language** is quite closely connected to a region.
2. The literal meaning of Jagannatha is **lord of the world**.
3. Kathak was evolved in **Northern** India.
4. **Mir Sayyad Ali** and **Khwaja Abdus Samad** were the prominent painters at Akbar's court.
5. **Kirtana** was the most popular Bhakti song in Bengal.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. False

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The Chera empire of Mahodayapuram, which was established in the ninth century in south-western part of Kerala introduced the Malayalam

language. Malayalam was used in inscriptions and official records of the subcontinent.

2. The conquerors such as Mughals, Marathas and the English East India Company tried to control the temple of Jagannatha at Puri mainly because it would make their rule acceptable to the local people since the temple was important as a place of pilgrimage.
3. In the Rajput society, the minstrels occupied an important position in the society. They used to record and preserve the stories of Rajput heroes in the form of poems and songs and also would inspire others to follow their example.

The stories and poems recited by minstrels were of great emotions, such as loyalty, friendship, love, valour, anger etc. Ordinary people often got attracted by these stories, poems and songs sung by the minstrels.

4. By the mid-eighteenth century, the Kangra school of painting was also established. Kangra artists developed style that took miniature painting to a new height. It was influenced by vaishnavite traditions. Their main features of this school of painting were the use of soft colours including cool blues and greens and a lyrical treatment of themes. These miniatures were preserved in palaces for centuries, while the paintings of ordinary women and men could not survive for long.

5. The Brihadharma Puran allow Bengali Brahmins to eat fish as it is an important part of the Bengali food since time immemorial.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. Between 15th to 19th centuries, number of temples were built, having a double-roofed or four-roofed structure. It is a distinctive feature of Bengal architecture, e.g., Dakshineswar temple. In the four-roofed structure, four triangular roofs placed on the four walls move up to converge on a curved line or point. Temples were built on a square platform, which had plain interiors but decorative outer walls, ornamental tiles or terracota, e.g., Shyamaraya temple in Vishnupur in the Bankura district of Bengal.
2. Miniatures are small-sized paintings generally done in water colour on cloth or paper. The Mughal emperors encouraged miniature paintings depicting court scenes, scenes of battlefield and huntings, marriage parties and other themes from social life. These were painted in brilliant colours and give us a very good idea of the costumes, ornaments and lifestyles of that period.

10. Eighteenth Century Political Formation

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. Bahadur Shah, the eldest son of Aurangzab, succeeded him.
 2. The different regions that emerged as regions that were Hyderabad, Awadh and Bengal; the Rajputs of Amber, Mewar and Marwar; and the Jats and the Marathas.

3. The third battle of Panipat was fought between the armies of Marathas and Ahmed Shah Abdali.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. a. 3. c.

C. Correct the underlined words :

- Ans.** 1. Bahadur Shah was succeeded by **Jahandar Shah**.
2. **Burhan-ul-Mulk sa adat Khan** founded the independent state of Awadh.
3. The rule of Maharaja Ranjit Singh extended from **Indus to Yamuna**.
4. **Jai Singh** founded the city of Jaipur.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans** 1. Bahadur Shah was succeeded by his son **Jahandar Shah**.
2. Banda Bahadur was executed in **1716**.
3. **Jai Singh** founded his new capital at Jaipur.
4. **Shivaji and Peshwa Balaji Vishvanath** consolidated the power of the Marathas.
5. **Nizam-ul-Mulk Asaf Jah** was the founder of Hyderabad.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. True

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The later mughals were the Mughal rulers who ascended the throne after Aurangzeb. They were as follows : Bahadur Shah I (1707-1712) ; Jahaudar Shah (1712-1713); Farrukhsiyar (1713-1719); Muhammad Shah (1719-1748); Ahmad Shah (1748-1754); Alamgir-II (1754-1759); Shah Alam-II (1759-1806); Akbar Shah (1806-1837) and Bahadur Shah Zafar-II (1837-1857).
2. Nizam-ul-Mulk Asaf Jah was the founder of Hyderabad. He was one of the powerful members at the court of Farrukhsiyar. He first became the governor of Awadh and then of the Deccan. Taking advantage of the turmoil in the Deccan he gathered power in his hands and became the actual ruler of that region.
3. Shivaji had a group of eight senior ministers called as ashtapradhan. The prime minister was called peshwa. The minister of foreign affairs was called dabir. The chitnis were the incharge of royal correspondence. The minister incharge of judicial department was called nyayadhis.
4. The Jats were warrior class community based around Delhi and Mathura.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. After the death of Aurangzeb, a war of succession broke out among his sons as well, and his eldest son, Bahadur Shah, came out victorious to succeed him on the Mughal throne. But he could not control the rising power of the Marathas and the Sikhs. He died in 1712 and was succeeded by his son Jahandar Shah. During his rign, two brothers, Husain Ali and Abdullah, generally known as the Sayyid Brothers, became very powerful. They played an important part in the Mughal politics. They became king makers. They wanted the Mughal king (Jahandar Shah) to become a puppet in their hands and when he refused

to do so and tried to become independent they got him murdered after a brief reign of 10 months. Then they put his nephew Farrukh Siyar on the throne. His reign lasted for six years (1713-1719). As he tried to free himself from the yoke of the Sayyid Brothers, he too was put to death. The next notable king raised to the throne, was Muhammad Shah whose rule lasted till 1748 CE. With the help of some supporters, he was able to overthrow the Sayyid Brothers. After him, other Mughal rulers ruled over the empire which were only in the home.

2. From 1695 AD. the Sikhs not only fought against the Mughal officials but also local kingdoms of North Punjab. Under Guru Gobind Singh, they fought several battles against the Mughal ruler and instituted the order of Khalsa.

Guru Gobind Singh introduced the institution of Khalsa in 1699. The dusting of the Khalsa was to rule. It was summed up in an apt slogan, *raj karega khalsa or the sikh will rule*. The Sikhs successfully resisted the invasion of Ahmad Shah Abdali who had seized the province of Punjab and the sarkar of Sirhind from the Mughals.

3. The third battle of Panipat was certainly one of the decisive battles of India. In this battle the Marathas were going from strength to strength. They were considered as the successor of the mighty Mughal empire. The entire Deccan area was under their influence and its effect can be felt as far as the northern India particularly in Delhi where the powerless Mughal emperor used to reside to. In the effort to build an all India empire, the Marathas took on Ahmed Shah Abdali, the Afghan intruder in 1761 in the third battle of Panipat. In this battle the Marathas were completely defeated by the Afghan forces and this permanently destroyed the Marathas ambition of building a powerful empire. Also, it gave the English a chance to replace both the Marathas and the Mughals in central administration.

4. **Administration of the Marathas**

The Marathas had developed an effective administrative system though, they continued to be engaged in endless military campaigns. The Marathas had inherited the system of administration from Shivaji. The Marathas chiefs were known as Sardars. The chiefs like Sindhia of Gwalior, Gaekwad of Baroda and Bhousele of Nagpur had enormous resources and powerful armies. The land revenue was the main source of income. They had divided their territories on the basis of revenue. The territories not under their direct control paid 'Chauth'. It was fixed at one-fourth of the revenue paid by the rulers. In return they got the protection from external attacks. The territories that paid sardeshmukhi, fixed at one-tenth of the revenue, got protection against attack by other forces. It was because of these routes that silk produced in the chandlery region found a new outlet in Poona, the Maratha capital. Under Marathas, Burhapur expanded its hinterland considerably to include Poona and Nagpur in the south and Lucknow and Allahabad in the east.

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Democracy is a government which depends on the consent of the governed, i.e., the people. "Democracy is the government of the people, by the people and for the people."
 2. Rosa Parks was an Afro-American woman.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b. 3. a. 4. a.

C. Correct the underlined words :

- Ans.** 1. **Democracy** is a government which depends on the consent of the governed.
 2. The **majority** rule is a characteristics feature of democracy.
 3. No man is considered **above law**.
 4. The basis of democracy **justice**.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The **majority rule** is often described as a characteristics feature of democracy.
 2. **Caste system** is one of the common forms of inequality in India.
 3. All the persons are subject to **law**.
 4. One of the common forms of inequality in India is the **caste system**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Direct democracy, also known as pure democracy, is a form of democracy and theory of civics wherein sovereignty is in the hands of the assembly of all citizens who choose to participate. This assembly might pass executive motions, make laws, elect and dismiss officials and conduct trials.
 2. The Indian Constitution recognises that every person is equal before the law which means that law is supreme and all people, big or small, are equal before the law. In nutshell it states that all are subject to law and no one enjoys any special privileges. No one is exempted from law. Every person has access to all public places including playgrounds, hotels, shops, markets, wells, roads and bathing gnats. It debar unsociability and anybody practicing it is punishable according to the law. So, all the people should be treated equally.
 3. Inequality is prevalent not only in India but also it exists even in developed states like the US where African-Americans have been denied right to equality for centuries. Blacks in the USA did not enjoy parity status for centuries. Once, Rosa Parks, an Afro-American woman, refused seat to a white man in a bus on 1 December 1955. This refusal started the Civil Rights Movement in the US led by Martin Luther King. Many people even called it the Black Power Movement.
 4. The rule of law states the supremacy of law which means that all persons (individuals and government) are subject to law. The Indian

Constitution recognises that every person is equal before the law which means that law is supreme and all people, big or small, are equal before the law. Everybody has to abide by the law and anybody who violates the law is punished according to the law.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. There are two main principles that any definition of democracy includes. The first principle is that all citizens, not invested with the power to govern, have equal access to power and secondly all citizens enjoy legitimized freedoms and liberties.

The **majority** rule is often described as a characteristic feature of democracy. An essential process in representative democracy is competitive elections, that should be fair and impartial. Further, freedom of political expression, freedom of speech and freedom of press are essential so that citizens are able to vote in their personal interests.

2. Once, Rosa Parks, an Afro-American woman, refused seat to a white man in a bus on 1 December 1955. This refusal started the Civil Rights Movement in the US led by Martin Luther King. Many people even called it the Black Power Movement. The Civil Rights Act (1964) brought an end to discrimination on the basis of race, religion or maternal origin. Likewise, Afro-American children were no longer to be discriminated in school. However, many Afro-Americans still live in a pathetic condition. The rise in power of the first Black President, Barack Obama has raised hopes for Black people and gradually the society is exposed to change its attitudes towards the Black.

2. The State Government

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

Ans. 1. A proposal to pass a new law or to change an existing one is called a bill.
2. The Lower House in a state is called State Legislative Assembly.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. c. 2. a. 3. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

Ans. 1. The State laws are made by the **Chief Minister**.
2. The real head of the executive at the state level is the **Governor**.
3. **State Legislative Council** is the upper House of the state legislature.
4. The presiding officer of the Vidhan Sabha is called **Speaker**.
5. A **Money** bill can be introduced only in the Lower House.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. False
2. True
3. False
4. True
5. False

E. Match the following :

- Ans.**
- | | | |
|-------------------------|---|---|
| 1. Governor | → | a. Lower House of the State legislative |
| 2. Chief Minister | → | b. Money Bill |
| 3. Legislative Assembly | → | c. Presiding Officer of the Vidhan Parishad |
| 4. Chairman | → | d. Nominal head |
| 5. Budget | → | e. Head of the state government |

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. There are 29 states and 7 union territories in India.
 2. In order to become a CM of any of the states in india, one must fulfill the following requisites :
 - He/she should be a citizen of India.
 - He/she should not be less than 25 years of age.
 - He/she should not be of unsound mind.
 - He/she should not be a criminal, bankrupt or hold any office of profit.
 - He/she should be a registered voter.He/she must be the member of any of the houses either the Legislative Assembly or the Legislative council.

3. Governor

- The Governor is the chief executive authority of a state. He/She is appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister. He can remain in office for a period of five years.
4. A Governor can dissolve the assembly before it completes its term on the advice of the chief Minister.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. Powers and Functions of the Governor

- The Governor invites the leader of the party which has won majority of seats in the state elections to form the government. The Governor appoints the Chief Minister, Council of Ministers and all other high ranking officials of the state. He/She also has the power to dissolve the Vidhan Sabha. Bills can become laws only if they are signed by the Governor. The Governor is consulted by the President in the appointment of judges to the High Court. If the Governor feels that a particular state government is not functioning as per the Constitution, he/she can send a report to the President. This could lead to President's rule in the state.
2. The Vidhan Sabha is the lower house in the six states that have a bicameral legislature or the sole house in the rest of the unicameral states. The members of this house are the direct representatives of the people of the particular state and are also elected by the adult citizens of that particular state. The Vidhan Parishad is the lower house in the six states that have a bicameral legislature. The members of the Vidhan Parishad are elected by members of the government, including the presidents.
 3. A proposal to pass a new law or to change an existing one is called a bill. Articles 196 to 207 describe the procedures for passing different types

of bills. Ordinary bills can be moved by the ministers and the remaining members of the house. Bills moved by ministers are called Government Bills, while bills moved by other members are called private Bills.

- The bill is discussed and debated in three stages. Then, it is put to vote in both House. If the majority of the members present in the house vote for the bill, it is sent to the other house. There also, it goes through a similar procedure. When the bill is passed by both Houses of the Legislature of the state, it is sent to the a governor for his assent to the bill. It becomes a law after the Governor's assent. The Governor may between the bill to the legislature with suggestions, the legislature may or may not accept the suggestions and send it back to the Governor for assent. This time, the Governor shall not withhold assent to it.

3. Working of the State Government

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
- Health is the state of being free from illness or injury.
 - The public healthcare comes for free or at a low cost. Unlike public health service, private health services are expensive and people have to pay a hefty amount for treatment, tests and medicines.
 - Costa Rica is one of the healthiest countries in Latin America.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. b. 4. c.

C. Correct the following statements :

- Ans.**
- Health** is a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being.
 - Healthcare in India is the responsibility of the **states**.
 - Clean** drinking water is a key to remain healthy.
 - The private health services in our country are highly **expensive**.
 - Poor** people are affected by diseases more than others.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
- Health** also means mental well-being.
 - Health** is a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being.
 - There are two types of healthcare services available in India—**Public**
 - The Panchayats brought **improvement** in several fields.
 - Costa Rica ceased to have an **army**.

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
- There are four general determinants of health :
(i) Human Biology (ii) Lifestyle
(iii) Environment (iv) Health Care Services
 - India has a wide range of private health services. A large number of doctors operate private clinics. In urban areas many doctors run specialised nursing homes and offer laboratories for special facilities like x-ray, etc. In addition, a large number of medicinal shops are available. In rural areas private doctors operate as Registered Medical Practitioners (RMP).
 - Health services are called 'Public' because they are meant for the

general public. The government provides these services to all the people.

4. Health services are largely provided by the city hospitals. This gives greater advantage to the rich and urban people, although more than half of our population in villages. Medicines have become very expensive. The rural poor often have to borrow money in order to get proper treatment during sickness.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. The state government is responsible for planning implementing and monitoring schemes to improve public health. So it sets up health centres, hospitals, laboratories for testing, ambulance services, blood banks, etc. In order to run such healthcare facilities, health workers, nurses, doctors and other health professionals are also employed. These people advice, diagnose and treat illness. We also need medicines and medical equipments for treating patients. Our state governments make arrangement for them. In India, the government's efforts to improve public health have been focused in the Five year Plans on coordinated planning between the states and the centre and on sponsoring various health programmes. The Government expenditure on health is jointly shared by the central and state government.
 2. There are following two types of healthcare services available in India :
 - Public health services
 - Private health services

Public Health Services

Public health services include the whole chain of health clinics and hospitals operated by the government. All the hospitals are linked and both rural and urban centres cover treatment from common illness to special services. In villages, the government provides a health centre with a nurse and village health worker working under the superintendence of doctors at the Primary Health Centre (PHC). At the district level, district hospitals are provided while large cities have multi-speciality hospitals. These hospitals are called public as the government provides healthcare to all citizens and the resources required to operate these come from taxes paid by public. An important feature of this system is that the public healthcare comes for free or at a low cost. Thus, Government takes care of health by preventing spreading of diseases like malaria, jaundice, chikengunya, diarrhoea, tuberculosis (TB). It is the duty of government to ensure right to life to all. For this it is essential that people get timely treatment especially during emergency situations.

Private Health Services

India has a wide range of private health services. A large number of doctors operate private clinics. In urban areas many doctors run specialised nursing homes and offer laboratories for special facilities like x-ray, etc. In addition, a large number of medicinal shops are available. In rural areas private doctors operate as Registered Medical Practitioners (RMP). Unlike public health service, private health

services are expensive and people have to pay a hefty amount for treatment, tests and medicines.

3. The Kerala government brought some significant changes in the state in the field of health. It gave 40 per cent of the entire state budget to the panchayats so that they may fulfil the requirements of the villages. The health of the villagers was also a major factor which was kept in mind. The panchayats acted enthusiastically and brought improvement in several fields. Water supply schemes were checked and the working of schools and anganwadis was ensured. Not only this, healthcare facilities were also improved to a great extent. All these steps successfully uplifted the status of the villages in many ways. Despite these improvements, one can feel the shortage of medicines in the villages. There are many hospitals which don't have sufficient number of beds and doctors.

4. Growing Up as Boys and Girls

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. • Boy are usually given toys like cars, balls, blocks, etc. while girls are given dolls, kitchen set, doctor set, etc.
• We tend to buy blue colour clothes for boys and pink colour clothes for girls.
2. The biological distinction between boys and girls is termed as sex, often interchangeably used with gender. Gender is a social construct specifying the socially and culturally prescribed roles that boys/men and girls/women have to follow.
3. Child marriage, widow remarriage, and the dowry system are some social evils which hinder the development of women.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. b. 3. b. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Gender** affects every aspect of life.
2. We tend to buy **pink** for girls and **blue** for boys.
3. Early **marriage** means more children.
4. **Double burden** means double work.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. False 4. True

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Yes, In our society house work is meant for women. Most of Indians think that women are meant only for housekeeping jobs. The men folk seldom participate in household chores. They find it below their dignity to do these work.
2. In the early age girls and boys are differentiated in the manner of toys. For example, girls are given soft toys such as dolls and boys are given tough toys such as cars, guns, etc.
3. When there is unjust discrimination against girls in different aspects of

life, we call it gender inequality. Gender inequality is not because of biological differences between a boy and a girl. It is a social issue.

4. Samoan islands are part of a large group of small Islands of the southern part of Pacific Ocean. The research shows that the Samoan children did not go to school. Both boys and girls were taught other things like how to take care of children or do household work. The young boys and girls were to look after their younger siblings in Samoa. At the age of nine boys started to learn or join the outdoor activities like fishing and planting. Girls from younger age did errand jobs for adults and cooking food till they were teenagers. When they became teenagers i.e. after the age of 14, they had to go for fishing and work in the plantations or weave baskets etc. Both boys and girls learnt these activities from older children in their childhood.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. A family makes clear distinction between boys and girls even before the birth of a child. This is because, quite often parents want a boy rather than a girl child. They give different toys to them to play with. For example, boys are generally given cars or planes to play with while girls are given dolls. Girls are also encouraged to learn household chores and help their mothers in the kitchen in order to enable them to become good housewives and good matters. On the other hand, boys are expected to work outside home and earn money to support the family. That is why, they are courage to do well in sports and studies so that they become physically strong and mentally sound. In schools, girls are suggested to take Home Science whereas science and. Technology are considered to be predominantly boys subjects. Sufficient encouragement is not given to girls in the field of sports and physical education.
 2. Presently, there are many women in India who work outside and manage the house also at the same time. This way they share Double Burden means double load. Even in the past times in rural areas, women have often worked at fields as well as in house like cooking food, cleaning the house, taking care of children and elders in the family and so on. And in present times urban areas educated women do jobs and maintain their home also.
 3. The Constitution of India ensures gender equality in its preamble as a Fundamental Right. It also empowers the state to adopt measures of positive discrimination in favour of women by way of legislation and policies.
India has also ratified various international conventions and human rights to secure equal rights for women, such as ratification of convention on elimination of all forms of discrimination against women in 1993. Women have been finding a place in local governance structures, overcoming gender bias.
The passing of Pre-natal Diagnostic Test Act in 1994 also a step in removing gender discrimination. This Act seeks to end sex-determination tests and female foeticide and prohibits doctors from conducting such procedures for the specific purpose of determining the

sex of the foetus.

The Government also announced the National policy for empowerment of women in 2001 to bring about the advancement, development and empowerment of women.

5. Women Change the World

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The collective efforts of women demanding equal status is called women's movement.
2. Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain and Ramabai.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. a. 4. c.

C. Correct the following statements :

- Ans.** 1. Professions requiring technical knowledge are not considered fit for **women**.
2. Sultan's Dream was written by **Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain in 1905**.
3. According to the census of **2011**, 82.14 percent of girls and women are literate.
4. Women have campaigned relentlessly **against** the dowry system.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. In most of the families, **women** lack support from their family members.
2. Presence of **women** began to be seen everywhere.
3. **Sultana's dream** was written by Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain in **1905**.
4. International Women's Day is celebrated every year on **8 March**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. False

F. Answer the following questions :

- Ans.** 1. Women have made their presence in railways, politics, aeronautics, police, army, medical, engineering, etc. felt in recent past.
2. Other than girls, there was another class which was discriminated against by their teachers and classmates were Dalit and Adivasi communities. As the result, many began to leave the schools in the middle for several other reasons.
3. Yes, stereotypes effect women's right to equality. Women are typically seen as the homemakers while men as the breadwinners. In the job scenario, women are seen as doing the jobs that are considered safe for them. So they become teachers or nurses, roles that fit with their image of caretaker. Professions that require a scientific or technical knowledge are not considered fit for women. Firstly, because of the risks involved and secondly, because of the stereotype attached that women cannot handle technical things.

As a result of these stereotypes, we find people focusing more on educating the boys for professions such as doctors, engineers and pilots. Girls do not get the same support from their parents and once they finish

studies they are married off.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain

One of the women reformer was Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain. Like other girls Rokeya was also not allowed to read and write English by her parents. But she did not lose hopes. With the help of her sister and brother she managed to learn the English alphabet because she wanted to be an English writer. And she achieved what she dreamt. She wrote the story titled 'Sultana's Dream' in 1905. The story was about a women called Sultana who reaches the island called "Ladyland". Ladyland was an imaginary place where women had the freedom to study, work and create invention. She started a school for girls in Kolkata in 1910 and thus helped other girls to get education. According to her, education was the key to women's emancipation and therefore, she struggled to educate herself.

Ramabai

Ramabai championed the cause of women's education. She earned the title 'Pandita' because she could read and write Sanskrit. Her major contribution to women's education was that she established a mission in Khedagaon in Pune in 1898. The mission provided education to widows and poor women and taught them not only to become literate but to be independent as well. They were also given skill training like carpentry, running a printing press, etc.

2. Through the years women have adopted different ways of fighting against discrimination and injustice.

These include campaigning, protesting, raising awareness amongst the people and showing solidarity to other women's movement. For 25 years women's rights advocated have been campaigning against violence against women. Women have been subjected to violence at home known as domestic violence. Women have also campaigned relentlessly against the dowry system. Women have also raised their voices against discrimination and harassment at work.

protesting : Women's movement also focusses on issues like violation of women's rights. If an act of law violables their interest, they have stood up to protest. Attention of the public is drawn through demonstrations and rallies towards these injustices.

Raising Awareness : Women's movement has had an important role to play in raising awareness on important issues concerning women like their rights, education, health etc.

Showing solidarity : Women's movement has also expended to show solidarity with the causes of the women who have suffered on any grounds. Investigations, protests and solidarity help to create public awareness and the police and judiciary also takes notice of this issues.

6. Understanding Media

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. Media refers to any kind of format used to convey information.
 2. The local media covers the local news as per its importance. The local media, either print or electronics, covers the local issues of public importance.
 3. The unique about the Deen Datit a weekly newspaper, is that it is bringing out since 1990 by the washer men in the state of Jharkhand. This is totally handwritten newspaper and a unique platform for spreading awareness among the people in the state.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. c. 3. c.

C. Choose the correct option :

- Ans.**
1. Media should play a (positive/negative) role in the development process.
 2. Newspapers are (print/electronic) media.
 3. (Radio City/All India/Radio) is radio broadcaster of the government of India.
 4. The information provided by the media should be (biased/balanced).
 5. An (ethical/unethical) is essential in a democracy.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. **Media** refers to any kind of format used to convey information.
 2. A **television** is called a mass media.
 3. The media should realize their **responsibilities** towards society.
 4. In democracy the media acts as a **watchdog**.

E. Match the following :

- | | | |
|-----------------|---|--------------|
| 1. Typewriter | → | a. Radio |
| 2. Video Camera | → | b. Internet |
| 3. Modem | → | c. TV |
| 4. Audio | → | d. Newspaper |

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. Media is a plural form of the word, medium that means a way of communicating information, etc, to people. In this way, media refers to the various ways through which we communicate in society. For example, telephone, television, radio, newspaper, etc.
 2. Mass Media are diversified media technologies that are intended to reach a large audience by mass communication, while Media are the tools used to store and deliver information or data.
 3. The media plays an important role in setting the agendas by focusing on a particular event or by avoiding a particular event. Events which are newsworthy from media's perspective get full media attention. Events which are not newsworthy may not get attention at all.
 4. The technology that the mass media uses keeps on changing continuously as more advanced machines are developed. To keep abreast of their competitors they have to deploy the latest technologies

which requires a great deal of money. Moreover, in bringing news or a favourite programme to your homes, an entire film crew comprising of the director, producer, cinematographer, camera operators, lighting technicians, film editors, etc. and several artists or newsreaders are required. This is like any other profession in which people have to be paid for services rendered. Therefore, mass media requires a lot of money to run its operations.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. In a democracy the media acts as a watchdog. It acts as a link between the people and the government. The media plays an important role in providing news and discussing events taking place in and outside the country. This helps in developing awareness about governmental policies. Media communicates the viewpoints of both the people and the government on major issues and problems. That is why it called the fourth pillar of democracy.

2. Various types of plays in different cultures were probably the first form of mass media. Over the years, the technology changed and print media became the new means of communication. The printing press introduced by Johannes Gutenberg in 1453 marked the beginning of a revolution in the way the world received printed information. However, printing books was quite expensive, hence printed material could not be used as a mass media for a couple of centuries. Newspapers were also introduced but they became easily available to the masses only in the nineteenth century.

During the twentieth century, the growth of mass media was driven by technology that allowed massive duplication of material. Technologies such as printing, record pressing and film duplication led to the duplication of books, newspapers and films at low prices for a large number of people. Radio and TV entered the field of mass media as electronic media which could duplicate information electronically. Thus, on the basis of the technology used, the mass media came to be classified as print media and electronic media. All India Radio, now known as Akashvani is the radio broadcaster of the government of India.

3. The local media covers the local news as per its importance. The local media, either print or electronics, covers the local issues of public importance. Since the constitutional approval of Panchayati Raj System the media coverage on Gram Panchayat elections are extensive.

People also use community radio to tell the local problems like, irrigation facilities, prices of different crops for the farmers, uses of pesticides and fertilizer for better crop production.

The newspapers are written in local languages and published locally.

7. Media and Advertising

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Advertising is the promotion of a company's products and services carried out primarily to drive sales of the products and services but also to build a brand identity and communicate changes or new products/services to the customers.
2. A brand is created by giving a particular name to an object highlighting its qualities.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. a. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Correct the underlined words :

- Ans.** 1. Advertising is quite **meaningful** in the corporate world.
2. A **brand** is a name given to a product or service.
3. **Poor people** rarely find a place in advertisements.
4. The advertisements are **expensive** affairs.
5. Advertisements have a **strong** influence on our lifestyles.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Advertisement** diverts people's attention to products.
2. A **brand** is a name given to a product or service.
3. The branded or packaged product is always **costly** than an unbranded one.
4. Making an advertisement is a long drawn **process**.
5. We must encourage advertisements with **social** messages.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. When the advertising techniques are used to inform, educate and motivate the public about social ideas, human equality, health, hygiene, energy conservation, forestation, etc., it is called social advertising.
2. The advertisements help to create brand values. In doing so it makes use of our personal emotions and social values. They often change our perception of how we see things and ourselves. Advertisements in this way act at a strong influence on our lives.
3. Daal are known to be the store house of proteins for the people who do not eat other sources of proteins such as egg and fish etc. As such the manufacturer is trying to sell the health benefits to its consumers. The possible images in the advertisement could be the healthy persons eating the above mentioned branded daal highlighting the importance of proteins present in the daal.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. There is a deep link between democracy and advertisement. Advertisements, though they are free creative expressions, exhibit inequality.
- The advertisements themselves are costly affairs. Making an advertisement requires the hiring of advertising professionals. A lot of money is spent in the making of advertisements. Then showing them on various media is also a costly affair. To retain its image in the minds of the people, the advertisements have to be shown again and again. This naturally results in spending a huge amount of money.

It is obvious that such a big sum of money can be spent only big business houses. People with small business cannot afford to spend such amounts of money on advertisements through newspapers or TV, so they rely mostly on word of mouth. Moreover, branded, products are welcomed by the society because of the massive advertisements that go into making them a success.

The advertisements make us believe that packaged goods are superior in quality to the unpackaged ones. Since people prefer the packaged goods, the sales of similar businessman who cannot advertise or package the product is adversely affected and this forces them out of the market.

Though advertising appeals to the personal emotions of the people and have a strong influence on our lifestyles, as citizens of a democratic society we must make independent choices. We must encourage advertisement with social messages and discourage products that highlight the inequalities in society.

2. Making an advertisement is a long drawn process. There is no surefire recipe of making an advertisement. Many books have been written on the topic by leading marketers of the advertising world. Usually help of specialist advertising professionals is taken while making an advertisement, though scientific research is done to understand the consumers' mind. After that the marketing team decides about the image or message which needs to be projected. Selection of media is also an important criterion. Most of the brands need to be shown across all types of media. The advertising professionals then plan about a certain model or celebrity to hire. Huge budget is involved while filming the ad film. It should be short with strong punch-line because nobody has time to see a lengthy ad film.
3. A social issue (also called a social problem, social conflict, or social illness) refers to an issue that influences and is opposed by a considerable number of individuals within a society. Polio, AIDS, etc are the example of social issues.

The aim of this type of advertisement creating awareness amongst people about a good cause. Some of the popular themes for social advertising are 'pulse polio', power conservation, protection of environment, awareness about AID's, family planning, and discrimination against girl child, etc. Advertisements like 'Do not Mix Driving and Drinking', 'Each One, Teach One' are some examples of social advertising. This type of advertisement also promotes communal harmony, national unity and consumer projection. People may also be encouraged to donate Blood. They also provide food or clothing for those who suffer because of natural disasters, such as an earthquake.

8. Markets Around Us

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans. 1. A market is a physical place where buyers and sellers meet and

exchange goods, services and information.

2. People's access to markets depend on availability of things, quality, price and credit.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. b. 2. b. 3. c. 4. a.

C. Encircle the right option :

- Ans.** 1. A (~~ransaction~~/communication) is the exchange of goods and services for money.
2. Malls are (~~bigger~~/smaller) than shopping complexes.
3. The goods produced in the factories are bought up by (~~retailers/wholesale traders~~).
4. There should be (~~inequality/equality~~) in the market.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Buying** and **selling** are the two activities that take place in a market.
2. **Weekly** markets are held on one specific day of the week.
3. A **shopping mall** is meant for complete shopping experience.
4. A wholesaler purchases the item from the factory in **bulk**.
5. **Convenience** facility adds to the popularity of a market.

E. Write true or false :

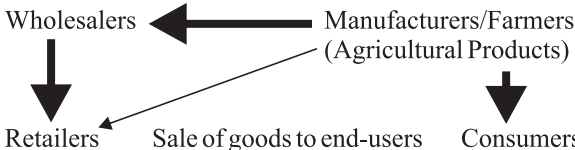
Ans. 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. True

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. We need a market to buy things or services we need in our day to day life. For example, vegetables, fruits, pulses, clothes, daily use times, etc.
2. A wholesaler buys goods from producers in bulk and then, sells them to retailers. So, a wholesaler acts as a link between producers and retailers. In the wholesale markets, goods are sold in bulk to traders known as retailers.
3. In neighbourhood market, shops are near our home and we can go there on any day of the week.
4. By a chain of market we mean a process by which a product is reached to the consumer from the manufacturer. It involves a series of buyers and sellers.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. A chain of markets is formed when a number of traders supply goods from the produces to the consumers. We thus have wholesale markets where other dealers buy the goods in bulk. These dealers then sell the goods in weekly markets to consumers and thus a chain of markets is formed. The chain serves the purpose of bringing the goods from the producers, who live in for off areas, to consumers in towns and cities. Flow chart of chain of markets is as follow :



2. People's access to markets depends upon many factors. The chief

among them are, however, the following :

- i. Availability of Things :** The availability of different things is the first factor which affects people's access to the market. If different things of daily use—fruits, vegetable, groceries, milk, butter, drinks, breads, etc. are not available in a particular market, nobody would go there. There should be shops selling different things such as medicines, grocery, stationary etc.
 - ii. Quality :** Almost all customers prefer to buy things of good quality. If any market has to flourish it must maintain its standard and provide things of good quality to the customers.
- 3.** People are able to sell things they produce or grow in the market. They get opportunities to work in the market. It has also been observed that the maximum earnings or benefits are given to the rich people in the market. These are the people who have their own factories or land etc. and make huge profits in the market. As compared to these, there are other rich people who make only moderate profits. They are dependent on rich people for loans, raw materials, marketing or even employment. As they are dependent, they are also employed. Thus in market, everyone does not gain equally.

World We Live In-8

1. Resources

GEOGRAPHY

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

1. Solar energy and wind energy are the two examples of potential resources.
2. Human resources are important because human resources use their knowledge, skill and technology to transfer the natural material into the valuable products or resources.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

1. c. 2. b. 3. c. 4. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

1. All our requirements are taken care of **directly** or **indirectly** by nature.
2. **Minerals, Soil, Plants** and **animals** are some natural resources.
3. All non-living things are called **abiotic** resources.
4. The largest solar plant in India is located at **Madhapur in Gujarat**.
5. The term **Sustainable Development** was coined in the Earth Summit in 1992.

D. Write true or false :

1. true 2. false 3. true 4. true 5. false

E. Match the following :

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. Economic value | • Minerals can be bought or sold |
| 2. Beautiful landscape | • Aesthetic value |
| 3. Legal value | • Land, air, water |
| 4. Ethical value | • Flora and fauna |
| 5. Human resources | • Knowledge, health, skill etc. |

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

1. Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs, provided we have the technology to make it accessible and economically feasible, can be termed as a resource.
2. Naturally occurring materials which are used by humans in their natural form or with little modification are known as natural resources.
3. The utility of resources gives them value or in other words they have some worth. The value is of many kinds like a landscape has aesthetic value, a metal or a mineral has economic value.
4. Resources are classified as biotic resources and abiotic resources on the basis of origin.
Biotic resources : They are obtained from the biosphere and have life such as human beings, flora, fauna and fisheries, livestock etc.
Abiotic resources : All things, which are non-living, are called abiotic resources, e.g. rocks and metals.
5. We should conserve resources to prevent misuse, overexploitation and depletion of resources. Resources are very important for our development. As they are limited in nature, any misuse of them will prove harmful for ourselves only.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

1. The resources can be classified into various ways, based on different parameters. They can be classified into three types—natural, human and human made.

Natural resources : All resources that are obtained from nature are called natural resources. They are sub-divided into many other types.

- On the bases of their origin, natural resources can be classified as biotic resources and abiotic resources.
- On the basis of their renewability, natural resources can be classified a renewable and non-renewable resources.
- On the basis of their stage of development, natural resources can be classified as potential actual resource, reserves and stocks.
- On the basis of distribution resources are ubiquitous and localized.

Human resources : Human resources include the quantity as well as the quality of people. Humans are the most important resource. No substance in nature is resource all by itself. It has to be put to use by us and only then it acquires resource value.

Human-made resources : These resources are aerated by human being from the materials available in the environment. They in turn are used for the production of other resources. Tools, machines, buildings and other infrastructure are all examples of human made resources.

2. The human beings are not only the most important but also the ultimate resource on the Earth. The human beings can explore, develop and convert the natural resources into useful goods as per their abilities and demands. Thus the people, who are the human resource, have to be healthy, educated and skilled.

The human beings are the only one who can create more resources and put them to best possible use. The human resources actually refer not only to the numbers, but also to the physical and mental abilities of the people.

The human resource development can possibly be carried out by improving the quality of people's skills through education and training. The human resources like he natural resources are not distributed uniformly on the Earth's surface. They vary greatly not only in their special distribution, but also as per their education, age, sex, standard of living etc.

3. Conservation of resources is a method or way to achieve sustainable development because our wants are endless but resources are not limitless. Like clean water, forests, minerals, coal etc. are limited. So, to sustain the development that we have done we need to conserve our resources. Sustainable Development is end and resource conservation is means.

2. Natural Resources, Vegetation and Wildlife

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. High mountains of the Himalayas and the Thar desert in Rajasthan
2. The top layer of land which is composed of grainy and loose substances is called soil. Soil is composed of broken rocks, sand, clay and humus.
3. The Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES)—to try to ensure that trade in wild animals and plants does not threaten their survival. CITES protects thousands of species of animals and plants.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. b. 3. b. 4. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

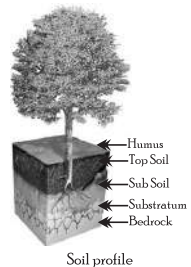
- Ans.** 1. **Land** can be used by humans in diverse ways.
2. The original rock from which the soil is formed is called the **Parent rock**.
3. **Plants** and **animals** influence humus formation in soil.
4. **Ground water** is the main source of potable water for us.
5. Awareness programmes like **social forestry** and **vanamahotrava** should be promoted.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Excessive farming → a. Terrace farming
2. Cultivation on mountains → b. 46.6%
3. Ostrich → c. Soil degradation
4. Net sown area in India → d. Mixture of water and waste products
5. Sewage → e. Flightless bird

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Land can be utilized by humans in diverse ways. These can include residential, industrial, agricultural, forestry and mining purposes. This is known as land use.
2. When land started losing its upper fertile cover and started becoming deficient in minerals, it is called land degradation.
3. The top layer of land which is composed of grainy and loose substances is called soil. Soil is composed of broken rocks, sand, clay and humus. The figure given alongside shows the soil profile. Composition of different layers of soil is called soil profile.
4. In many countries across the world, there are laws for the protection of natural vegetation and wildlife. Some areas which are outstanding in the diversity of their vegetation and wildlife have been recognized as biosphere reserves. Within these reserves, combinations of different types of ecosystems are protected while allowing the local people to continue using them in sustainable ways.



5. Some methods of wildlife conservation are as follows :
 - i. Setting up national parks and sanctuaries to enable wild animals to live in safety in conditions similar to their natural surroundings.
 - ii. Trying to increase the numbers of rare species by breeding them in zoos.
 - iii. Preventing the hunting and smuggling of rare birds and animals.
 - iv. Preventing trade in things made of horn, ivory and animal skin.
 - v. Raising awareness about the need to conserve vegetation and wildlife.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. Soil Formation

There are six major factors that determine soil formation. They are :

Nature of parent rock : The original rock from which the soil is formed is called the **parent rock**. The basic material of the soil and the minerals present in it will depend upon the type of the parent rock. For example, clayey soil is derived from shale while sandy soil which comes from the weathering of sandstone.

Climatic conditions : The climatic conditions particularly temperature and precipitation, affect soil formation. Greater variations of temperature and more moisture in air increase the rate of weathering, thereby, accelerating the process of soil formation.

Topography : The topography or slope of the land in a particular region, is also important. On a steep slope the weathered rock particles cannot get deposited as they keep sliding down the slope under the force of gravity. On gentle slopes and flat lands, however, soil gets accumulated easily.

Humus : Humus of the dead animals of plants and animals, provides organic matter to the soil and makes it fertile.

Time : Time is a very big factor in the formation of soil. It gives maturity to the soil. The layers of older soils will be deeper than the newly formed ones because they have taken a long time in their formation.

Agents of erosion : The various agents of erosion like running water and wind also contribute in soil formation by depositing the materials carried by them. For example, the river plains are covered with fertile aluvial soil. Loess is a type of soil deposited by wind.

2. The preservation, protection and efficient utilisation of soil resources is known as the soil conservation. It is also useful for efficient management of land particularly for the development of rural areas in India.

Soil conservation is a praiseworthy effort made by man to prevent soil erosion in order to retain the soil fertility. It may not be possible to stop soil erosion entirely, but much can be done to reduce the rate of soil erosion.

3. **Following are the methods of conservation of soil:**

- **Afforestation** is the most effective method to conserve soil. Reckless cutting down of trees should be stopped and more and

more trees, shrubs and grasses should be planted. In dry areas, where wind erosion is common, rows of trees and shrubs should be planted to check the velocity of the wind. These are called **shelter belts**.

- **Terrace farming** is very effective in conserving soil in mountainous regions. The hill slopes are cut into terraces so that the speed at which the rainwater flows down is reduced. Crops are grown on these terraces.
 - **Overgrazing** by cattle, sheep and goats should be controlled as the land becomes exposed to the rain and wind. Fodder should also be grown as a crop.
 - **Strip cropping** is the method of growing different crops (cover crops alternating with cultivated crops) in narrow strips, usually along the natural contours of the land.
4. The advantages of natural vegetation are as follows :
- The forests play very significant role in our life. They have several direct and indirect aesthetic, economic and ecological benefits.
- They are the great source of oxygen and help us by absorbing carbon dioxide.
 - The roots of trees bind the soil and protect it from damage by running water and blowing winds. They reduce flood problems.
 - The forests are the great source of humus, that make the soil more fertile.
 - They provide shelter and livelihood to many forest communities and villages.
 - The forests also provide shelter to many wild animals.
 - Forest land is used as pastures and meadows for grazing cattle and sheep.
 - They also provide a variety of forest products such as timber for furniture, fuelwood, fodder, oil, lac, gum, charcoal, medicinal plants and herbs, turpentine oil, varnishes, pulp for paper, honey, fruits, beeswax, and various other useful products.
 - Many minerals are obtained from the forests.
 - They are the home of various hill stations which attract a large number of tourists.
- In this way, they are helpful to earn great revenue for the government.
- Forests are a place for recreation.

3. Minerals and Power Resources

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. A mineral is a solid formation that occurs naturally in the Earth.
 2. Copper is used in making electrical wires and electrical components.
 3. Solar energy, wind energy, tidal energy, etc. are non-conventional

sources of energy and are environment-friendly.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. a. 2. c. 3. b. 4. c. 5. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The extraction of mineral resources from the Earth is called **mining**.
2. Saudi Arabia is one of the leading producers of **petroleum**.
3. **Kalgoorile** and **Coolgardie** are the leading gold producing areas of western Australia.
4. **Iron-ore** is the backbone of industrial development.
5. **Petroleum** was made from buried remains of animals.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Windmills → a. Bombay High
2. Coal → b. Radioactive metals
3. Nuclear energy → c. Jharia
4. Petrol → d. Gulf of Kachchh
5. Tidal energy → e. Netherlands

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Minerals which contain iron are called **ferrous minerals**. Iron ore, manganese and chromite are examples of ferrous minerals. Minerals which do not contain iron are called **non-ferrous minerals**. Gold, silver, copper, lead, etc. are examples of non-ferrous minerals.
2. Iran, Iraq, Saudi-Arabia and Qatar.
3. Minerals are non-renewable; once consumed, they cannot be created or renewed. We have to use the mineral resources in such a way that a sizeable amount is left for future generations. We have to use them in a planned way. With the rise in world population and a desire to have a higher standard of living, the demand for mineral resources has also increased. As such there is an urgent need of conservation of mineral resources.
4. Natural gas is found along with petroleum deposits. The gas is released when crude oil is drilled and brought out to the Earth's surface. Natural gas can be used as a domestic and industrial fuel.
5. Petroleum is next to coal only in terms of fulfilling our energy demand. Petrol, diesel, kerosene, lubricants, plastics and wax, etc. are important petroleum products. Petroleum and its derivatives fulfil our energy resources to a very large extent. They play an important role in our economic development. As such petroleum is called black gold.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Minerals are found in different types of rocks. They are unevenly distributed over the surface of the Earth. Rich and widely used minerals are deposited under selected areas. Metallic minerals are found in igneous and metamorphic rocks.
Non-metallic minerals are found in sedimentary rocks. Igneous and metamorphic rocks are found in plateaus and sedimentary rocks are found in new mountains and in river basins.
Minerals are distributed unevenly throughout the world. Many minerals such as manganese iron ore; lead, tungsten, antimony, bauxite etc. are

found in large quantities in Asia. Africa is the largest producer of diamonds, gold and platinum. North America too, has large deposits of minerals. Iron-ore, copper, tin, zinc, gold silver, buaxite, mica, diamond, platinum are the most significant minerals of south America. Europe is a leading producer of lead, zinc, managanese, nickel, copper and iron ore. Antarctica too has a variety of minerals resources.

2. The extraction of mineral resources from the Earth is called mining. The method of mining depends upon the depth at which the mineral is located. Surface mines, that is mines which are located very close to the surface, are called quarries. The method of open-pit mining is practised in such mines. When the minerals are located under the surface, deep holes called shafts have to be dug to reach them. This method is called shaft mining. The process of extraction of mineral oil is called drilling. It is done by digging deep wells called oil wells.
3. Coal and petroleum are also called fossil fuels because they were made from fossils. You know that it takes millions of years for the formation of fossil fuels, but human beings are using fossil fuels at an alarming rate which is a cause for concern. A time would come when all the reserves of fossil fuels would be exhausted. Fossil fuels also significantly contribute towards environmental pollution.
4. The difference between conventional sources and non-conventional sources can be summarised as below :

Conventional sources of energy

Firewood and mineral fuels like coal, petroleum and natural gas are conventional sources of energy.

Mineral fuels are essential for generating power. They are also known as fossil fuels or energy resources. Most of these conventional sources are exhaustible resources, i.e., their reserves are limited (except some sources like firewood which are renewable).

Non-conventional sources of energy

Non-conventional sources of energy are those that are continuously renewed by natural processes. Solar energy, wind energy, bioenergy from biofuels, hydroelectric power, geothermal energy, wave and tidal energy are some of the examples of renewable energy sources. Unlike fossil fuels, these energy sources are non-polluting. Nuclear energy is the only non-conventional energy sources which is non-renewable and polluting.

4. Agriculture

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Agricultural land is the most basic of all the resources as it provides food, clothing and shelter to humans. It supplies raw materials to the industries. More than half of the world's population is directly or indirectly engaged in agriculture.

- Loamy soil
- Jowar, bajra and ragi are called millets and are coarse grains. Millets can be grown on less fertile and sandy soil. It is a handy crop which can grow even on sandy soil.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1 a. 2. a. 3. a.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Agriculture supplies **raw-materials** to the industries.
 2. Rice is the main crop of the **monsoon** region.
 3. **Commercial grain** farming is practised in the USA.
 4. **Cooperative farming** is practised in India.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Coffee → a. Moderate temperature and rainfall
 2. Rice → b. Sandy soil
 3. Millets → c. High temperature and rainfall
 4. Wheat → d. Well drained loamy soil

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Irrigation facilities, better seeds, fertilisers and improved methods of farming were introduced to increase the harvests. The use of power allowed the introduction of modern machinery in agricultural operations. Farm mechanisation not only increased crop productivity, it also brought more areas under agriculture. It created a crop surplus so that international trade in agricultural products became possible.
2. Nomadic herding is a system of raising animals by allowing them to graze on natural vegetation. The herder does not grow any fodder but move from place to place in search of pastures and water, along defined routes. As they do not have high breed of animals, yields of milk and meat are low, just sufficient to meet their own requirements. The animals raised are sheep, goats, camels and yaks. People trade skin, wool and bones of animals.
3. Both crop and fodder is grown in mixed farming. Additionally, livestock is also reared. In India where the rainfall is low this farming prevails. Mixed farming is practised in Europe, eastern USA, Argentina, southeast Australia, New Zealand and South Africa.
4. Tea is one of the most common beverages in the world. This crop requires cool climates and high rainfall throughout the year. It needs gentle slopes but well drained loamy soil. Darjeling is famous for its tree plantations. You will see many workers plucking the leaves of the tea and putting it in a basket attached at their back. Kenya, India, China, Sri Lanka produce the best quality tea in the world.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Physical factors like climate, soil and relief, etc. have a great bearing on agriculture.
- **Climate :** Climatic factors have the greatest control over the world distribution of agricultural types. Certain things are grown only in hot, cold or temperate regions. The amount of rainfall is another factor which has a great bearing on agriculture. That is why wheat

is the main crop of the temperate region and rice of the monsoon region.

- **Soil** : Soil is another important factor in agriculture. Clayey soil is more suitable for the cultivation of rice because it retains water for a long time. Fertile sandy soil is very useful for the cultivation of wheat, while black lava soil is suitable for growth of cotton.
 - **Relief** : Relief and altitude have also a great bearing on the agricultural activities. Plains, river valleys, and deltas are more suitable for cultivation than hilly areas. Crops are mainly grown in plains, while sheep and cattle are reared in the mountains. Well-drained hillslopes may be suitable for some crops (tea, coffee) while other crops may require marshy canals (rice). With the change in altitude, types of trees keep changing and there is hardly any vegetation above 6000 ft.
 - **Other Factors** : Factors like market for a commodity, transport, capital, labour and government policy also influence agriculture.
2. Different types of farming are practised in different parts of the world. Depending upon the climatic conditions, production of crops, need of labour and other inputs; farming can be of two main types, viz. subsistence farming and commercial farming.

Subsistence Farming

It is characterised by small and scattered land holdings and use of primitive tools. As the farmers are poor, they do not use fertilisers and high yielding variety of seeds in their fields to the extent they should. Facilities like electricity and irrigation are generally not available to them. The farmers and their families consume most of the food production. In places where facilities like irrigation and electricity are available farming has improved. Subsistence farming can be further divided into **intensive subsistence farming and primitive subsistence farming**.

- **Intensive Subsistence Farming** : In this type of farming simple tools and human labour are used to produce crops from small plots of land. If the climate is good and has more days of sunshine; the soil is fertile, then farmers are able to reap two crops in a year. Rice is the main crop in such cases. Apart from rice; maize, pulses, wheat and oilseeds are also grown in intensive subsistence farming. This type of farming is prevalent in thickly populated areas of south, southeast and east Asia which are monsoon fed regions.
- **Primitive Subsistence Farming** : Primitive Subsistence farming is further classified as shifting cultivation and nomadic herding.
 - (i) **Shifting cultivation** : It is practised in the thickly forested areas of Amazon basin, tropical Africa, part of south-east Asia and north-east India. These are the areas of heavy rainfall and quick growth of vegetation.
 - (ii) **Nomadic herding** : It is practised in semi-arid and arid regions of Sahara, Central Asia and some parts of India like Rajasthan, Jammu and Kashmir. Nomadic herding is a system

of raising animals by allowing them to graze on natural vegetation.

Commercial Farming

Commercial farming involves growing crops and rearing animals mainly for sale. In commercial farming the plot size is very big, huge amount of capital is required, latest machines are used and minimum human labour is used. Commercial farming can be classified into commercial grain farming, mixed farming and plantations.

- **Commercial Grain Farming** : It prevails in most parts of mid latitudes in the grassland regions which have been turned into agricultural lands. The countries include the United States of America, Canada, Ukraine, Western Europe, Argentina, Australia, and Punjab, Haryana and plains of Western Uttar Pradesh in India.

- **Mixed Farming** : Both crop and fodder is grown in mixed farming. Additionally, livestock is also reared. In India where the rainfall is low this farming prevails. Mixed farming is practised in Europe, eastern USA, Argentina, southeast Australia, New Zealand and South Africa.

3. The main features of a farm in India are following :

- Generally, the size of the farm is very small, about 1.5 hectares. This is due to the repeated division of land among heirs of cultivators, for many generations.
- The land is intensively cultivated. Double cropping and multiple cropping are common. Farmers usually grow wheat or rice or pulses.
- The use of machines is very limited, either they take the tractors on rent or use traditional methods of farming.
- All family members help in various agricultural activities.
- The farm produce is for self-sustenance and there is very little surplus.
- The farmers have started using High Yielding Variety of seeds to increase agricultural production. It has increased agricultural production manifold, known as Green Revolution.
- The farmers also keep animals like buffaloes and hens, which provide them with milk and eggs.
- The farmers do not have their own transport or storage facilities, so they sell their produce in the local markets at low price.

The main features of a farm in the USA are following :

- The average size of a farm in USA is much larger than that of an Indian farm—about 250 to 500 hectares. The farmer generally resides at the farm.
- Farms are highly mechanised, most work is done by machines. Tractors, seed drills, levellers, combine harvesters and threshers perform various agricultural operations. The manual labour is scarce and, therefore, expensive.
- Crops are grown after making sure that soil and water resources meet the needs of the crops. Measures are taken to control pests,

that can damage the crops. From time to time, soil samples are sent for soil testing to check whether the nutrients are sufficient or not. This helps to plan a scientific fertiliser programme. Everything is highly scientific. The computers are linked to the satellites, which give a precise picture of the field and weather conditions.

- Animals are reared on dairy farms. Mixed farming is common. Fodder crops are grown to feed the animals.
- Extensive type of farming is practised. The yield

5. Industries

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Industry is an organized activity whose aim is to produce, extract or supply goods or to provide services.
2. Industries which are owned and operated by the government are called public sector industries.
3. The power supply should be adequate and continuous and it should also be economical. Electricity can be easily transmitted to long distances. Hence only those industries which require abundant electricity are located near the source of power.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. c. 3. a. 4. a. 5. b.

C. Fill in the blanks:

- Ans.** 1. When **primary** products are processed, they change into secondary products.
2. In case of Osaka, most of the raw material is **cotton**.
3. The steel plant at Jamshedpur is an example of **secondary** industry.
4. **Forest based industries** use forest produce as raw materials.
5. **Bengaluru** is also called the 'Garden City of India'.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. False

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The processing of primary products to produce secondary products is called **secondary industry** or **manufacturing industry**. This industry includes the sugar industry, the textile industry, the steel industry, oil refining and so on
2. The industries such as iron and steel, aluminium, aircraft, heavy engineering and machine tools that use raw materials in the form of metals are called **mineral-based industries**.
3. **Agro-based industries** : Plants and animal based products are the raw materials in **agro-based industries**. Sugar manufacturing, food processing, vegetable oil, cotton textiles, leather industry, etc. are examples of agro-based industries.
- Mineral-based industries** : The industries such as iron and steel, aluminium, aircraft, heavy engineering and machine tools that use raw

materials in the form of metals are called **mineral-based industries**.

- Osaka is known as '**Manchester of Japan**'. This city, located near the sea, expanded rapidly after 1930. The vast plains around Osaka are suitable for the growth of cotton mills. Warm and humid climate, availability of hydel power, cheap and efficient labour, river Yodo providing abundant water for cotton mills and the port facilities for import of raw cotton and export of cotton textile are the locational advantages of this city. Cotton is mainly imported from India, Egypt, China and USA.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. Industries which are owned by individuals or firms formed by individuals are called private sector industries, e.g., the Tata Iron and steel Plant, Jamshedpur, Hindustan Lever Ltd. etc. Some industries are managed completely by the state or its agencies. These are called public sector industries. Chittaranjan Locomotive works, the Integral Coach Factory, Perambur and the Iron steel plants at Bhilai and Durgapur are good examples of this kind of industry.

- Pittsburgh is called the **Steel Town** in USA. It is located in the Pennsylvania state. The city is located on the confluence of the Allegheny River and the Monogahela River. The **Ohio River** starts from this meeting point. Pittsburgh is highly accessible place from the point of Great Lakes and the important trade route between the east and the west.

The Pittsburgh Lake Erie region has a number of industrial towns which have developed various engineering goods industries depending upon the availability of steel from Pittsburgh. Pittsburgh became the iron and steel capital of the world. A number of towns have developed around Pittsburgh such as Wheeling, Youngstown, Warren, Cleveland, etc. They also produce steel.

The Pittsburgh steel region get their iron ore supply from the **Mesabi ranges** via the Great Lakes and coal from the **Northern Appalachian coalfields**. The steel mill in Pittsburgh started production as early as 1924. Today, most of the steel mills have become old and have closed down. The remaining steel mills are now along the river courses. The finished products from the steel plants in Pittsburgh are taken either by land routes or by lake routes to the markets. A large number of factories in and around Pittsburgh, use steel from steel mills of Pittsburgh as a raw material for making railroad equipment, heavy machinery, agricultural implements, rails, military equipment, etc.

- The location of an industry depends on a number of factors. The best possible location is selected only after assessing the advantages and disadvantages of various factors. Some of them are discussed below :

Availability of raw material : The raw material which is to be processed needs to be available in adequate quantities so that its supply is regular. Industries whose raw materials are bulky and perishable are located near the source of raw materials. For example, sugar mills are located near the sugar cane growing areas as sugar cane

dries up if transported through long distances. Similarly industries like iron and steel and cement are located near the source of raw materials as they are heavy and bulky in nature.

Power supply : The power supply should be adequate and continuous and it should also be economical. Electricity can be easily transmitted to long distances. Hence only those industries which require abundant electricity are located near the source of power. For example, aluminium industry, which requires a lot of electricity for smelting of the ore is located near power generating units.

Transport facilities : An efficient and cheap transport network is necessary to carry raw materials to the factories and to carry finished products to the markets as well. Road and railway junctions and port towns, therefore, are major industrial centres. Mumbai and Kolkata in India, Osaka in Japan and Chicago in the USA are good examples.

4. Geographically, Jamshedpur is an ideal place for an iron and steel factory. There are many reasons for this. Sakchi was only 32 km from Kalimati railway station on Bengal-Nagpur railway line. Deposits of iron ore, coal and manganese were close to Sakchi. Sakchi was close to the major market of Kolkata. Coal comes from coal mines of Jharia, and iron ore, limestone, dolomite and manganese come from Odisha and Chhattisgarh. The Kharkai and Subarnarekha rivers ensured sufficient water supply.

6. Human Resources

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans. 1. Human resources are an important resources as they are the ones who helps in the all round development of a country.
2. The difference between birth and death rates is known as the growth rate.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans. 1. b. 2. b. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans. 1. A country needs **human** to utilize its resources.
2. **Asia** is the most populous continent in the world.
3. The **density** of population varies from place to place.
4. **Migration** means movement of people in and out of an area.
5. Those who are in the working age are the **economically** active.

D. Match the following :

- Ans. 1. People coming to a country → a. Growth in population
2. Higher death rate → b. Emigration
3. People going out of a country → c. De-growth in population
4. Higher birth rate → d. Immigration

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The most densely populated regions of the world are countries of South and South-east Asia and Western Europe and North-eastern parts of North America.
2. The population of the world has been growing steadily since the beginning of civilization.
However, it has increased rapidly in the last couple of centuries because of the change in the **birth rate** (number of births per thousand people per year) and the **death rate** (number of deaths per thousand people per year). The difference between birth and death rates is known as the **growth rate**.
3. **Migration** means movement of people in and out of an area. This is another important factor which affects the change in population. When people leave a country, it is called emigration and when people come to a country, it is called immigration.
4. Age-sex Pyramid is a diagrammatical representation of people of various age groups in a country. It indicates the working population and dependent population of a country in terms of males and females.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Density of Population is the number of people per unit area of land. It is usually expressed as the number of persons in every square kilometre of land. The average density of the world is about 45 persons per sq km. This means that if all the people in the world were to spread out uniformly over its total land area, there would be around 45 people in every square kilometre of land. The density of population varies from place to place. Among the continents, Asia has the highest density of population, while Australia has the lowest.
The density of population also varies widely within continents. Generally, large cities, coastal areas and river basins are densely populated, while deserts, mountainous regions and forested areas are sparsely populated.
2. Both Japan and Bangladesh are equally densely populated, yet Japan is a developed nation while Bangladesh is a developing nation.
The main reason for this is that in Japan most of the working population is highly efficient, skillful and hardworking. The people in Japan use all their available resources to their fullest extent. Also a large number of people are engaged in secondary and tertiary activities. In sharp contrast to this, the people in Bangladesh are not able to use all their resources well. Here, most of the people are engaged in primary activities.
3. The population pyramid of a country in which both birth and death rates are high is broad at base and narrows towards the top. This is because although many children are born, a large percentage of them die in their infancy, relatively few become adults and there are very few old people. This situation is depicted in the Kenyan pyramid. In certain stages where death rates are decreasing, the pyramid is broad in the younger age groups, because more infants survive to adulthood. This is seen in

the pyramid of India. Such population contains a relatively large number of young people which means a strong and expanding labour force.

In countries like Japan, low birth makes the Pyramid narrow at the base. Decreased death rate allow more number of people to reach old age.

Skilled, spirited and hopeful young people gifted with optimistic outlook are the future of the nation. People must be educated and given skills to become able and productive.

1. Modern India

HISTORY

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The British power in India in the 18th century CE gave birth to the modern period of Indian history.
2. Industrial Revolution is the beginning of the manufacture of things with the help of machines.
3. An archive is a collection of historical documents or records providing information about a place, institution, or group of people.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Choose the correct option :

- Ans.** 1. (Political/Social) history deals with rulers and administration.
2. The modern period began from the middle of the (16th/18th) century.
3. The (French/British) established themselves as the main power in India.
4. (Mapping/Drawing) was an important part of surveys.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Political history** deals with rulers, administration, wars, etc.
2. It was a misnomer to refer to any period of history as **Hindu** or **Muslim**.
3. As a result of Industrial Revolution **capitalism** emerged as the basis of economy.
4. The **British** had established themselves as the main power in India.
5. **Mapping** was an important part of the surveys conducted by the British.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. False

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Dates in history are like the skeleton system, without which the body would be shapeless. A recollection of historical facts would be a meaningless heap unless the events were arranged in the sequence of dates of their occurrence.
2. Periodization is to divide history in various periods on the basis of certain common features. It is very useful as it help us to study and understand the past events in a better way.
3. The British believed in recorded everything in its minute detail. Every administrative details were recorded and carefully preserved. Every executive, legislative and judicial body had record rooms in which the

smallest details were kept. This has helped our historians immensely in the study of the period.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Earlier, the division of Indian history into three periods—Hindu, Muslim and British—was propagated by the British and European writers. But it was a misnomer to refer to any period of history as 'Hindu' or 'Muslim' when other faiths and religions also existed in these periods. Thus, the history of India is now rightly divided into the Ancient, Medieval and Modern periods. You have already read how people lived in the Ancient and Medieval times. You have also read that the establishment of the British power in India in the 18th century CE gave birth to the modern period of Indian history. The time frame of modern period of Indian history roughly extends from the middle of the 18th century to contemporary times. During the last two to three hundred years, there have been fast and radical changes in Indian polity, society, economy, art and culture. This makes the modern period of Indian history very different from the ancient or medieval times.
2. The sources of history of modern India are as follows :

Archaeological Sources

The British were great builders and built some of the most magnificent buildings of the time. The buildings reflected modernisation and also their imperialist prowess.

Literary Sources

Literary sources include original documents such as government orders and official correspondence. These are well preserved in the archives and give us a first hand knowledge of events.

The British recorded everything. Every administrative details were recorded and carefully preserved. Every executive, legislative and judicial body had record rooms in which the smallest details were kept. This has helped our historians immensely in the study of the period. The official records of this period are preserved in the National Archives of India.

2. The Establishment of Company Rule

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Europeans were the first traders to discover a sea route to India.
2. Mir Qasim fought against the East India Company in the Battle of Buxar.
3. Mysore wars were stretched from 1766 to 1799.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks:

- Ans.** 1. The **Europeans** decided to find new routes to India.
2. The Carnatic was the hinterland of **Coromandel** Coast.

- The Doctrine of Lapse was implemented during the reign of **Lord Dalhousie**.
- Lord Wellesley** started the policy of subsidiary alliance.
- Each of the three presidencies was ruled by a **Governor**.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. False 3. False 4. False 5. True

E. Match the following :

- Ans.**
- | | | |
|--------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 1. Dupleix | → | a. Subsidiary Alliance |
| 2. Robert Clive | → | b. Nawab of Bengal |
| 3. Lord Wellesely | → | c. French military general |
| 4. Lord Dalhousie | → | d. Battle of Plassey |
| 5. Siraj-ud-Daulah | → | e. Doctrine of Lapse |

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
- It means that a business enterprise makes profit primarily through trade, buying goods cheap and selling them at higher prices.
 - Clive conspired with Mir Jafar, the commander-in-chief of the Nawab army. Clive promised to make Mir Jafar the nawab if he helped him defeat Siraj-ud-daulah. The armies of Siraj-ud-daulah and the British met at Plassey in 1757. Finding that Mir Jafar had turned traitor, Siraj-ud-daulah fled from the battlefield. But he was chased and murdered. Mir Jafar was made nawab of Bengal by the British.
 - Tipu Sultan was deeply suspicious of the British and waged two wars against them. In the Battle of Seringapatnam in 1799, Tipu Sultan was defeated and killed. The kingdom of Mysore was placed under a new ruler who was forced to be loyal to the British.
 - Lord Wellesley started the policy of subsidiary alliance. The Company started to interfere in internal affairs of many states under subsidiary alliance regulation. They succeeded in installing a ruler of their choice in many kingdoms.

The Company forced the states into a 'subsidiary army'. Indian rulers were not allowed to have their own armed forces. They were to be protected by the Company. In lieu of that the particular king had to pay for the maintenance of the 'subsidiary army'.

- From 1772, a new system of justice was established. Each district had two courts—faujdari adalat (a criminal court) and a diwani adalat (a civil court). The Indian laws were interpreted by the Maulvis and Hindu Pandits for the European district collectors presiding over the civil courts. The qazi (a judge) and the mufti (a jurist from the Muslim community who expounded the law administered by the qazi) still administered criminal courts, but under the supervision of the collectors.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. **Consequences of the Battle of Buxar**

- The powerful Nawab of Awadh was left at the mercy of the English. The districts of Kota and Allahabad were taken from him.

- The Mughal emperor granted the Jagir of the Northern Circars to the British.
 - In the settlement with the Nawab of Bengal, the English got the right of diwani or the right to collect revenue in the province of Bengal, Bihar and Odisha.
2. The British considered the Marathas a threat. The Marathas were divided into many states with chiefs from dynasties like the Scindia, Holkar, Gaikwad and Bhonsle. They worked together in a confederacy under the control of a Peshwa (principal minister). The Peshwa was based in Pune. Three Anglo-Maratha wars were fought. The first war, which ended in 1782 with the Treaty of Salbai, had no clear victor. The second Anglo-Maratha war went on from 1803 to 1805. It was fought on many different fronts. It resulted in the British gaining control over Orissa and territories north of the Yamuna River including Agra and Delhi. The third Anglo-Maratha war of 1817-1819 resulted in the defeat of Marathas. The Peshwa was removed from his position and sent to Bithur near Kanpur on a Company pension.
 3. After the elimination of Dutch and Portuguese, the only European power left to compete for territorial control of India were the English and French. In this Anglo-French rivalry, both tried to gain supremacy over the other using local rulers as a fighting material. Ironically, the local rulers also started plotting against each other with the help of these trading companies. The trading companies used their clout with the local rulers and their rivalry to their full advantage. Several battles were fought between 1744 and 1764. The final outcome of these battles were complete colonisation of India and the founding of the British Empire. The main battles between the two European powers involving local rulers were the following :
 The Carnatic region was the hinterland of Coromandel Coast. The Anglo-French rivalry started from here. In a span of 20 years, the British fought the French in Carnatic Wars to establish their supremacy. These three wars, beginning 1744, were fought over possession of territories, over the issue of successors to the throne among the heirs of the local rulers and the war of succession among other rulers of neighbouring territories.
 4. The administration of the Company was different from that of the Indian rulers in many ways. The administration of the Company was based on sound principles formulated by the company officials. There were written laws that governed the company administration. The power was not in the hand of one person. There were some checks and balances on the power of the Governor-General the topmost official the company administration. All these were absent in the administration of the India rulers.

3. Rural Life and Society

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Lord Cornwallis.
2. A revenue estate which may be a village or a group of villages.
3. Need for growing cash crops such as indigo, cotton, raw silk, opium, pepper, tea and sugar led to commercialisation of agriculture.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. c.

C. Cancel out the wrong words :

- Ans.** 1. Agriculture/Mining was the mainstay of Indians.
2. The Permanent Settlement was introduced by Thomas Munro/Lord Cornwallis.
3. The Ryotwari system/Mahalwari system was introduced in South India.
4. Indigo plant grows in mediterranean/tropical climate.
5. The Indigo Rebellion was started in Punjab/Bengal.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The chief source of income of the government continued to be **land revenue**.
2. Under the **Mahalwari** system the village headman was responsible for revenue collection.
3. **Holt Mackenzie** surveyed in detail the land in the North-western provinces.
4. Indigo was used to make **blue dye**.
5. The price paid by British buyers for indigo was not very **high**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. True

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Lord Cornwallis introduced the Permanent Settlement to collect better revenue. As per this system, rajas and talukdars were recognized as zamindars. A permanent rate of revenue from land was fixed. Zamindars were supposed to collect the land revenue from peasants. As per the permanent settlement, the rate of revenue was not to be increased even in future.
2. Villages in south India did not have the tradition of zamindars. Hence, the Company officials felt that in south Indian villages a direct deal had to be made with the cultivators. The cultivator was known as ryot, which gave the name ryotwari system. Ryots had to directly pay the land revenue to officials appointed by the Company. This was not so in the case of Mahalwari system where the revenue was collected with the village headman.
3. Company got its revenue by many systems. Some of them are permanent settlement system, Mahalwari system and Ryotwari system.
4. Ryots were reluctant to grow indigo because of its ill effects on land. Also they were paid quite less for growing indigo.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Company draw its intentions towards in land revenue system because of the following reasons.
- The only objective of the company was to obtain more and more revenue. For this it was needed to reform the exesting revenue system.
 - The company wanted to abolish almost all the middleman in order to get maximum profit from the land.
 - The company wanted to grow commerical crops such as tea, coffee, indigo, opium etc. so that they can sell them overseas to earn huge profits.
2. The burnt of the new system fell on the peasants who were greatly oppressed. Forced labour and growing of commercial crops were thrust upon the peasants by the zamindars to meet the revenue demand. Often, the zamindars were unable to meet the commitment of land revenue. Consequently, up to one-third of the zamindaris were auctioned within the first three decades of the permanent settlement.
3. Ryots of Bengal in March 1859 refused to grow indigo and pay rent. They attacked indigo factories fully armed with swords, spears, bows and arrows. Women also came up equipped with pans and kitchen wares. Anyone working for the planter was boycotted socially and the gomasthas or planters agents were beaten up when they came to take revenue. Ryots openly declared that they could not be bullied by the planter or lathiyals—the lathi-wielding strongmen of planters. The indigo roys believed that they had the support of local zamindars and village headmen in their revolt against the planters. Village headmen, forced to sign indigo contracts, gathered the indigo peasants to fight pitched battles with those lathi-wielding strongmen. Even zamindars went around villages urging the ryots to resist planters as they were unhappy with growing power of planters.

4. Colonialism and Tribal Societies

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. A tribe is a group of people united by a common name, a common language in which the members take pride.
- Khonds, Khasis and Santhals
 - Birsa had a great impact on the Mundas. They treated him like a God-like figure.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. a. 4. a.

C. Fill in the blanks:

- Ans.** 1. India has been home to several **tribes**.
- Shifting cultivation is also known as **jhum** cultivation.
 - People of forests got **rice** and **grain** in exchange for their valuable forest products.

4. **Money lenders and traders** were the cause of misery of tribals.

D. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. False

E. Match the following :

Ans. 1. Jhum cultivation → a. Administrative Powers
2. Birsa Munda → b. Herders
3. Khonds → c. Meghalaya
4. Tribal chiefs → d. Munda Rebellion
5. Van Gujjars → e. Orissa

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

Ans. 1. **Jhum cultivation :** In this, the cultivation was done on a small pieces of land. The cultivators cut trees and burnt vegetation, so that they could use the land there. They spread the ash from the fire which contained Potash, to make the soil fertile.
2. The life of tribals changed significantly during British rule. They were forced to follow the laws made by British. This made the tribals against the British.
3. Money lenders and traders.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. In several regions, tribals got their livelihood through hunting and gathering produce. The Khonds of Orissa belonged to this community. They went for regular hunting and then divided the whole meat admist themselves. They even ate fruits and roots collected from the forest. They used to cook their food with oil, which they extracted from the seeds of trees and malwa flower. Shrubs and herbs from the forests were used for medicinal purposes. Local weavers and leather workers depended on Khonds for suply of 'kusum' and 'palash' flowers for dyeing leather and clothes.
2. Tribal life was disrupted by colonial rule in many ways Tribal chiefs were important people in many areas. They enjoyed a certain amount of economic power. They also had the right to administer and control their territories. Some tribal chiefs also had their own police. They also decided on local rules for forest and land management. The status of tribal chiefs changed significantly during British rule. They lost their administrative powers. They were also forced to follow the laws made by British. They could still keep their title and could rent out lands. They also had to pay tribute to the British. Keeping the tribal groups in discipline, on behalf of British, became their responsibility. Because of loss of authority they were not able to fulfil their traditional functions.
3. Birsa Munda claimed to be God's representative, born to protect the Mundas. He strongly protested against non-tribals occupying tribal lands and urged the Munda farmers not to pay rent to the Zamindars. Birsa Munda started the revolt in the Chotanagpur region. The entire Munda community joined together under his leadership. They attacked all symbols of British authority—British officials, missionaries,

churches and police stations. With his capture by the British in 1895, the rebellion came to an end.

The Munda rebellion was a significant event in the history of modern India and a source of inspiration to the many other tribal groups who fell victims to British exploitation. The rebellion led to the passing of the Chotanagpur Tenancy Act of 1908 which banned forced labour and also assured them some of the customary rights which the Mundas claimed.

Gradually the administration too became a little considerate towards the demands of the tribals and tried to address their grievances in a peaceful manner.

5. Crafts and Industries

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Iron, steel and cotton.
2. Dadabhai Naoroji.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. b. 3. b.

C. Fill in the blanks:

- Ans.** 1. The drain theory could be easily grasped by a **notion** of peasants.
2. India's textile exports declined in the **Nineteenth** century.
3. Spinning frame was invented by **Richard Arkwright** in 1786.
4. The first cotton mill in India was started in **1854**.
5. TISCO was set up in **Jamshedpur** in **1912**.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The drain theory stated that the British were continually draining India of its valuable resources. According to it a huge amount of money was regularly going to Britain which does not come back to India in any way.
2. By the early eighteenth century, Indian textiles became quite popular in Britain. This created problems for wool and silk makers in Britain. They began protesting against the import of cotton textiles from India. Their continued protests forced the British government in making a legislation banning the use of chintz; a printed cotton textiles; in England. This act was called the **Calico Act**.
3. The word 'Wootz' may have been a mistranscription of 'wook', an anglicised version of 'urukku'-the word for steel in Tamil or 'ukku'-the word for steel in Kannada, Telegu and many other south Indian languages.
- Wootz was made in crucibles by combining a mixture of wrought iron or iron ore and charcoal with glass, which was then sealed and heated in a furnace. The result is a mixture of impurities mixed with glass as slag and button of steel.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. By the early eighteenth century, Indian textiles became quite popular in Britain. This created problems for wool and silk makers in Britain. They began protesting against the import of cotton textiles from India. Their continued protests forced the British government in making a legislation banning the use of chintz; a printed cotton textiles; in England. This act was called the **Calico Act**.

In fact, the textiles industry in England was at a nascent stage during this period. The producers wanted a secure market in the country. The ban on the use of chintz helped in growth of calico printing industry in Britain. Workers in England copied Indian designs and printed them on white muslin or plain unbleached Indian cloth.

2. The Industrial Revolution in Europe coupled with high import duties and other restrictions imposed on the Indian goods in Britain and other European countries during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries wiped out the market for Indian artisans in Europe. The mass production in the new English factories made it impossible for Indian artisan's products to compete with factory products.

Till 1813, Indian industry, especially the textile industry, was adversely affected in two ways.

- The Company reduced the weavers to the status of indentured labour, by forcing them to take an advance from the company. In 1789, for example, the weavers were forced to pay a penalty of 35% on the advance taken if they defaulted in supplying goods.
- The British Parliament imposed an increased consolidated duty on consumption of calicoes and muslins in Britain.

Due to the discriminatory colonial economic policy, India was reduced almost totally to the status of an exporter of raw or processed agricultural goods.

India ceased being an exporter of cotton cloth, and became an importer of cloth and yarn, while England stopped importing cloth from India.

3. Doraabji Tata, the eldest son of Jamshedji Tata, and Charles Weld discovered the ideal place for setting up a new iron and steel plant. They had spent months looking for a good source of iron ore in Chhattisgarh.

One day, they chanced upon a small village of Agarias. They saw a group of men and women carrying basket loads of iron ore. The source of this ore was Rajhara Hills, which had one of the finest ores in the world. Even though, there was sufficient ore, there was the problem of water. So the factory could not be set up there.

An ideal spot was later found on the banks of the river Subernarekha and a factory [The Tata Iron and Steel Company or TISCO or (now Tata Steels)] and Industrial Township was set up in Jamshedpur in 1912.

4. In 1914, the First World War broke out. The steel in Europe was diverted towards the war effort. The Indian Railways had a huge demand for the supply of rails and it turned to TISCO. As the War dragged on TISCO also had to produce shells and carriage wheels for the government. Almost 90% of the steel produced by TISCO was being bought by the Colonial Government in the year 1919.

6. The Revolt of 1857

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The sepoys believed that the grease was made from the fat of cows and pigs, which their respective religions forbade to eat. This news spread like wildfire.
2. Mangal Pandey, Nana Sahib and Begum Hazrat Mahal.
3. The Governor-General of India was given the title of Viceroy. A Viceroy means a personal representative of the Crown.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. b. 4. a.

C. Mention the dates of the following events :

- Ans.** 1. 10 May, 1857 2. 29 March, 1857
3. 24 April, 1857 4. 2 August 1858
5. 7 November, 1862

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The British rule created **dissatisfaction** and **distrust** among the masses.
2. The **General Service Enlistment Act** was passed in the year 1856.
3. **Bahadur Shah Zafar** assumed the leadership of popular rebellion of 1857.
4. **Tantia Tope** fought a guerilla war from the jungles of central India.
5. The Governor-General was given the title of **Viceroy**.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. True

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi wanted the Company to recognise her adopted son as the heir, after the death of her husband. This was the demand refused by the British.
2. On 10th May 1857, many soldiers marched to the Meerut Jail and released the imprisoned sepoys. Many British officers were attacked and some were killed also. Guns and ammunition were captured by protesting sepoys. British buildings and properties were put on fire and a war on firangis was declared.
3. In 1856, the **Enfield rifles** were introduced in the Company's army. The cartridge used in it had a greased cap, which had to be removed/bitten off before use. The Hindu and Muslim sepoys were alarmed because they believed that the grease was made from the fat of cows and pigs, which their respective religions forbade to eat. This news spread like wildfire.
4. The two important consequences of the revolt of 1857 were as follows :
The British Government accepted direct responsibility for ruling India. For this many steps were taken by the British Government. A new Act called the Government of India Act, 1858 was passed in the British Parliament on 2 August 1858. The Act transferred the powers of the East India Company to the British Crown. This was done to ensure a more responsible management of Indian affairs.

The British decided to respect the customary religious and social practices of the people in India.

5. Begum Hazrat Mahal played a vital role in the revolt of Awadh. She ruled on the behalf of her minor son. She bravely led the forces and engaged the British in the battle for almost eight months. All the rebels supported her in her efforts to drive out the British from Lucknow.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The conquests and annexations had left a trail of discontentment among the rulers. Since the middle of the 18th century, the Indian rulers were gradually losing their power, authority and honour. Many of them had to sign the subsidiary alliance. The Doctrine of Lapse, further added fuel to the fire, when Lord Dalhousie annexed many states, in complete disregard of the age-old tradition that the adopted sons could inherit the throne, e.g., Satara, Jhansi, Nagpur.

Many Indian rulers tried to negotiate with the East India Company to protect their interests, e.g., Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi wanted the Company to recognise her adopted son as the heir, after the death of her husband. Nana Sahib, the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II asked the Company that he should be given the pension, when his foster father died. The Company refused to accept these requests. Awadh was annexed on the pretext of maladministration.

Next, the Company planned to bring the Mughal dynasty to an end. The descendants of the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah II were given orders by Lord Dalhousie, to vacate the Red Fort. In 1856, Lord Canning, the Governor General decided that Bahadur Shah II would be the last Mughal emperor.

2. In 1856, the Enfield rifles were introduced in the Company's army. The cartridge used in it had a greased cap, which had to be removed/bitten off before use. The Hindu and Muslim sepoys were alarmed because they believed that the grease was made from the fat of cows and pigs, which their respective religions forbade to eat. This news spread like wildfire. This proved to be the immediate cause of the revolt of 1857. Yes, the Revolt of 1857, would have been taken in the absence of this event.

3. The British Commissioner at Lucknow was Sir Henry Lawrence. He had time to fortify the Residency compound, which provided shelter to the British forces, men, women and children. The sepoys laid siege to the Residency building for eight months. The British managed to hold off the rebels, even though they suffered casualties due to the violence and sickness. Lawrence himself was killed in the fighting.

In spite of their best efforts, the rebels were unable to dislodge the British. This proved to be a decisive factor in the outcome of the Revolt.

4. As a result of the rebellion of 1857, the British changed their policies to a great extent. They transferred the administration of India to British crown. To maintain their rule they adopted the policy of divide and rule. They refrained themselves from making any more social reform.

7. Education Under the British Rule

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Sir William Jones
2. • The growth of education was not uniform at all levels.
• primary schools suffered because of the lack of funds.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. a. 3. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. William Jones was also a **linguist**.
2. **Wood's Despatch** is known as the Magna Carta of English Education in India.
3. Primary schools suffered because of lack of **funds**.
4. Sir Syed Ahmed Khan was a **social** reformist.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Orientalists believed that ancient Indian civilization was glorious, but had subsequently declined. In order to understand India it was necessary to discover the sacred and legal texts that were produced in the ancient period.
They believed that only a new study of these texts could form the basis of future development in India. It would, on one hand, help Indians rediscover their own heritage and, on the other, would make the British the guardians of Indian culture as well as its masters. By this process, the British could hope to win a place in the hearts of the 'natives'; only then could the alien rulers expect to be respected by their subjects. Because of this reason they believed that vernacular languages should be the medium of instruction.
2. Macaulay strongly believed that 'Oriental learning was completely inferior to European learning'. He recommended the Western system as it encouraged rational thinking and scientific research. Besides, the British felt a strong need for Indians who could be employed as clerks to help them in dealing with the locals. Influenced by the ideas of Macaulay, Governor-General William Bentinck passed the English Education Act of 1835 which formally introduced English education in India.
3. The decision of the colonial government to replace Persian as the language of the law courts in 1842 caused a great deal of anxiety among the Muslims. **Sir Syed Ahmed Khan**, a social reformist, recognized the growing need for the Muslims to develop proficiency in English and Western sciences for the development of the community.
In 1864, the Scientific Society of Aligarh was set up to translate scientific works into Urdu. In 1875, Sir Syed founded the **Mohammedan Anglo Oriental College**, based on the model of the Oxford and Cambridge universities. His aim was to establish an

institution that would impart Western education without compromising on Islamic values. It aimed to bridge the gap between the East and the West. It had both Hindu and Muslim students and teachers. This was called Aligarh movement.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. In the initial stages of their rule, the priorities of the British East India Company were conquest, expansion and consolidation. Therefore, they did not interfere in the existing system of education. In fact, education was completely neglected by the Company. But after completing territorial conquest and establishing control over revenues, the British felt that they had a cultural mission also : they had to 'civilise the natives' and change their customs and values.

There were many Englishmen who were interested in discovering the ancient Indian heritage, mastering Indian languages and translating Persian works into English.

2. In India and was considered the "Magna Carta of English education in India." The main recommendations of the Despatch were :

- Graded schools were to be established in the hierarchy as university, colleges, high schools, middle school and primary school.
- English was recommended as the medium of instruction for higher studies and Indian languages or vernacular at school level.
- Stress was laid on female and vocational education and on teacher's training.
- A system of grants-in-aid was recommended for the institutions that satisfied certain conditions to encourage private enterprises.
- Universities were to be set up at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras.

3. Among those who understood the importance of educational reform was Maharaja Sayajirao III of Baroda (1863-1939). He took a keen interest in the pursuit of arts, science and culture. He instituted a number of administrative as well as educational reforms in his kingdom.

In 1907, he made primary education free and compulsory in his state. He also took steps to encourage women's education, Sanskrit, Indological studies and fine arts. He set apart his personal and state funds to set up a university in Baroda. He patronized a number of leading thinkers like B. R. Ambedkar, Sri Aurobindo and Dadabhai Naoroji.

From none in 1871, the number of government schools increased of 2,614 in 1945, educating over 300,000 students. The literacy rate in Baroda came to be higher than that in British India. The creation of Maharaja Sayajirao University was completed by Pratapsinghrao Gaekwad who named it after his visionary grandfather. He also started a trust which exists to this day, catering to the educational requirements of the people of the former state of Baroda.

8. Women and Reform

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Western Education exposed the Indians to a new and different cultured.
2. Sati is the practice through which widows are voluntarily or forcibly burned alive on their husband's pierce.
3. Pandita Ramabai was a pioneer in the field of women's reform.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. b. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Women in India were subjected to all kinds of **inhuman** treatment.
2. **Raja Ram Mohan Roy** is known as the maker of Modern India.
3. **Vidyasagar** was vehemently opposed and boycotted by many people.
4. The custom of **child marriage** denied girl children the pleasures of childhood.
5. **Sarojini Naidu** was associated with the all India Women's Conference in 1927.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Women in India were subjected to all kinds of inhuman treatment and suffered from many kinds of discrimination and indignity. Their pathetic condition was manifest in various evils like child marriage, female infanticide, sati etc. They had no property rights. As a result of all this, most of the social reformers considered improvement in the status and condition of women as a necessary precondition for the overall social transformation.
2. The Sarda Act was passed to improve the condition of girls as they were used to marry in their early age.
3. **Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar** used the ancient texts to suggest that widows could remarry. His suggestions led the British to pass a **Hindu Widows Remarriage Law** in 1856, permitting widow remarriage. Vidyasagar was vehemently opposed and boycotted by many people.
4. **Pandita Ramabai** was a pioneer in the field of women's reform. She was a woman educated in the sacred Sanskrit texts by her father and had become a widow at a young age. Her own experience as a widow led her to work for the welfare of widows.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Child marriage was a hotly debated and controversial issue. Marriage alliances between families were fixed at a very young age, often to cement political and business ties. There was no practice of taking the girl's consent before fixing her marriage. It was thought that marrying a girl at a young age would protect her from other men. The dowry was also low if the groom was of a young age. Many parents viewed their daughters as a burden and did not hesitate to marry them to men who were much older to them. It was also feared that a girl who was left

unmarried till too late would not be able to find a husband. Due to the prevalence of child marriage, the rates of maternal mortality (indicating the number of women dying in childbirth or due to pregnancy) were high.

Behramji Malabari, a Parsi reformer, pushed for the age of consent to be raised. In 1891, the Age of Consent Bill was passed which increased the age of consent to 12 years for girls. In 1927, **Rai Sahib Harbilas Sarda** introduced the **Child Marriage Bill**. It was referred to a committee of ten, which included only one woman.

The committee moved quickly to gather public opinion and sent about 8,000 questionnaires to assess views on the issue. Women's organizations organized meetings where opinions about child marriage could be voiced. In these meetings, women expressed their feeling that child marriage 'crushed their individuality and denied them opportunities for development of mind and body'. In 1929, the Child Marriage Restraint Act (also known as the Sarda Act after its sponsor) was passed. It raised the age of consent for girls to 14 years and for boys to 18 years.

2. **Raja Ram Mohan Roy** was well-versed in English, Sanskrit, Persian, Greek languages. He had read the scriptures of the Hindus, Muslims and Christians. He founded the reform association known as the **Brahmo Samaj** in Calcutta, one of the first Indian socio-religious reform organisation. He advocated education of women.

Raja Ram Mohan Roy is well-remembered for his role in abolishing the practice of Sati. Through his writings in *Samud Kaumudi* (a Bengali journal started by him), he led a campaign against Sati. With the support of Lord William Bentinck, the Governor General of India, the practice was stopped in 1829, by law. He also campaigned for rights for women, including the rights for widows to remarry and to hold property. He is also known as the Maker of Modern India.

Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar used the ancient texts to suggest that widows could remarry. His suggestions led the British to pass a Hindu Widows Remarriage Law in 1856, permitting widow remarriage.

3. Ramabai began her social work with **Arya Mahila Samaj** in Poona. Later she established the **Sharda Sadan**, a school for Indian widows, in Bombay. Ramabai's greatest contribution was her effort to educate the widows and she left behind her pupils to carry her work forward.

9. Challenging the Caste System

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. People belonging to lower caste were called untouchables.
 2. E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker
 3. The Shiromani Gurudwara Prabandhak committee and Akali Dal led the Sikh Reform Movements.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. b. 2. c. 3. a. 4. c.

C. Encircle the correct option :

- Ans.** 1. (~~Tanning leather~~/Trading) was a work done by outcastes.
2. The All India Harijan Sangh was founded in (~~1932~~/1947).
3. Jyotiba Phule founded the (~~Satyashodhak Samaj~~/Arya Samaj).
4. (Dr Rajendra Prasad/~~Dr B.R. Ambedkar~~) was born into a Mahar family.
5. The Prarthana Samaj was formed in the (~~Western~~/Southern) India.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Each caste had to obey rigid rules which were sanctioned by **religion**.
2. People were not allowed to change their **social status**.
3. Mahatma Gandhi kept the abolition of **untouchability** in the forefront of his public activities.
4. **Periyar** criticised the Codes of Manu.
5. The Brahma Samaj forbade all forms of **Idolisation** and **sarifice**.

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. False

F. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Jyotiba Phule → a. Harijans
2. Henry Derozio → b. Prarthana Samaj
3. E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker → c. Satyashodhak Sabha
4. M.G. Ranade → d. Young Bengal Movement
5. Gandhiji → e. Periyar

G. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Untouchability is the quality or condition of being an Untouchable, ascribed in the vedic tradition to persons of low caste or to persons excluded from the caste system.
2. Jyotiba Govindrao Phule, popularly known as Mahatma Phule, was a great reformer and advocate of the cause of oppressed sections of society. In 1873, he founded Satyashodhak Samaj. Its membership was thrown open to anyone irrespective to his caste, creed or religion. He opposed the supremacy of Brahmans and organised marriages without their presence. In 1854, Mahatma Phule also started a school for the children of the depressed classes.
3. In 1927, Ambedkar started a “temple entry movement”. People from Mahar caste participated in that movement. Its goal was to affirm the fact that all people are equal in the eyes of God.
4. Periyar criticised the national movement because he thought that the national leaders were following the caste-based policies and are treating certain people as untouchables.

H. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. Reformers like **Mahadev Govind Ranade** strongly believed that without social reforms, it was not possible to achieve any progress in the political and economic fields. Social organisations such as the Brahma Samaj, Arya Samaj, **Ramakrishna Mission**, **Theosophical Society** and others attacked the caste system and were against its practice.

During our struggle for freedom people from different sections of the society came together. At this time, common participation in public demonstrations and meetings helped to weaken caste distinctions.

Mahatma Gandhi kept the abolition of untouchability in the forefront of his public activities. He lived among the untouchables, named them Harijans (children of god), adopted a Harijan girl as his daughter, and founded the All India Harijan Sangh in 1932 to promote their welfare. Gandhi firmly believed that political freedom had no meaning without social reforms. Hence, he whole-heartedly supported the cause of the downtrodden.

Numerous other individuals and organisations also worked to spread education among the untouchables, to open the doors of schools and temples to them, to enable them to use public wells and tanks and to remove other social inequalities which they encountered.

2. Periyar founded the "Self Respect Movement". He believed that the original Tamil and Dravidian culture was subjugated by the Brahmins. He wanted to free the society from caste-based inequality. He felt that the freedom from religion was the only way to achieve the goal.

Periyar also criticised the Codes of Manu which was viewed as the set of ancient laws in the Hindu society. Periyar also criticized the Bhagawat Gita and the Ramayana. He thought that all those religious books were an attempt to establish the Brahmins' domination of the society.

3. Mahatma Gandhi fought not only for independence but also the uplift of the most downtrodden and neglected sections of society. Gandhiji called the dalits 'Harijans' or 'children of God'. He considered untouchability as a sin and felt that unless it was eradicated, swaraj was meaningless. He said :

'In battling against untouchability and in dedicating myself to that battle, I have no less an ambition than to see a complete regeneration of humanity.'

Gandhiji started an ashram at Sabarmati in Gujarat in 1916. Here he welcomed people of all castes and classes. He organized many campaigns to give Harijans access to temples, public wells, tanks and schools. He himself cleaned toilets to display the dignity of manual labour. He started a paper called Harijan which was published in Hindi and English every week. Through his writings and activities he hoped to change the minds of the upper castes and make them give up 'the sin of untouchability'.

In 1932, Gandhiji started the Harijan Sevak Sangh. The goals of the organization were to open public wells, roads, schools, temples and cremation grounds to the untouchables.

Gandhiji travelled across India to talk about the evils of untouchability and to collect funds for the organization. He held public meetings to spread the message of equality among the castes.

4. The consequences or implications of the activities of reformers were not without fruits. They achieved the desired results. As a result of their efforts and with the spread of education and awakening, these so-called

depressed class became conscious of their basic human rights and began to raise their voice in defence of them. They were gradually successful in building up a powerful movement against the traditional oppression by higher castes. It was due to their sustained effort that the Constitution of independent India later provided the legal framework for the final abolition of untouchability. The Constitution further forbids any restrictions on the use of public wells, tanks, bathing ghats or access to shops, restaurants, hotels and cinemas. One of the Directive Principles of State Policy has also tried to promote the welfare of these classes. However, struggle against the evils of caste system still remains an uphill task before Indian people, especially in the rural areas.

10. Colonialism and Urban Change

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.**
1. The areas directly ruled by the British, were known as British India.
 2. The process by which more and more people come to live in cities is called urbanization.
 3. Railways help in transporting people and goods from one place to other in short time.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. c. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. In our country, industrialization led to **Urbanization**.
 2. Large numbers of **artisans** and **craftsperson** went back to agriculture.
 3. New towns like **New Delhi** and **Chandigarh** were planned cities.
 4. The **District collector** was made the agent of local administration.
 5. The city of Delhi is traditionally called the **land of seven cities**.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.**
1. The provinces in India were broadly divided into two categories—the areas directly ruled by the British, which came to be known as British India, and the Princely States which were ruled by the Indian princes who acknowledged the suzerainty of the British.
 2. Large scale declining of the traditional textile and handicraft industries led to the decline of older urban center.
 3. The English used terms such as 'white' and 'black' towns to identify the predominantly English and Indian towns.
 4. The British organised their police administration on well laid rules. They organised in a systemised manner from bottom to top. All the higher posts were reserved for the British. They appointed an inspector General of police as the head of the entire police force.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. In fact, with the advent of British rule, the old towns and cities which

had enjoyed prominence during the Mughal era started to decline. Unlike western Europe, where industrialization led to urbanization, in India, it led to the decline of older urban centres. This decline is known as de-urbanization.

As the Indian economy changed from being an exporter of finished goods to being an exporter of raw materials, old port cities like Surat and Machilipatnam (masulipatnam) went into decline. Local bankers became bankrupt. Towns associated with the textile trade like Dacca and Murshidabad also declined as the market was filled with cheap, factory-produced goods from England. Large numbers of artisans and craftspeople went back to agriculture.

2. The new towns like New Delhi and Chandigarh were planned cities. They were different from the older ones in respect of their area and population. Many units became enclaved in larger settlements (Daryaganj, Yusuf Sarai or Taimur Nagar in Delhi; Aaraharam Road in Madras; Gariahat in Calcutta).

Neighbourhoods were laid out in the British period and terms like towns, park, gardens, were imported from English. Some examples of these found in Delhi are Model Town, Green Park, Mayfair Gardens. These English terms were translated in independent India's names for neighbourhoods as puri (town), bagh and udyaan (garden), kunj (woods) and viharas (sanctuary). Examples of such terms used for housing estates in Delhi are Inderpuri, Motibagh, Vasant Kunj, Vasant Vihar etc.

3. The thanedari police system of the Company period was reviewed by the Police Commission of 1860 and subsequently the Police Act V of 1861 was enacted with the objectives of creating a reformed police force suitable for colonial governance. A separate police departments with a force of constables was created under an Inspector General of Police, who was to be responsible for the efficiency and discipline of the entire police department. He was to be assisted by a Deputy Inspector General. The latter, in turn, was to be assisted by an Assistant District Superintendent of Police. The subordinate police force was hierarchically arranged in the following order: the Inspector of Police, the Head Constable, the Sergeant and Constables.

A Jail Code was prepared to administer jails. The police and jail systems evolved under the Police Act V of 1861 which continued with small structural changes until the end of the colonial rule.

4. **a. Local Government**

The local government system of the native rulers was discontinued under the Cornwallis Code of 1793 which made the District Collector the main agent of local administration. All local government institutions at village and the pargana levels were abolished. The zamindars were no longer responsible for maintaining law and order. The qazi, who was a local judge before, was now reduced to a mere Muslim marriage registrar.

b. Municipalities

The European District Collector appeared as the sole authority of a

district. Under the Act XXVI of 1850, the concept of establishing municipal government for major towns was first adopted. The actual establishment of municipalities began under the Municipal Improvement Act of 1864. The District Magistrate was made the Chairman of the municipality. He was to be assisted by nominated commissioners who were to be selected from amongst the native elite. The proceeds of ferries, bazaar tolls and road use would make the sources of revenue of the municipalities. The municipal government was extended to smaller towns under the District Town Act or Municipal Act VI (BC) of 1868.

c. Railways

The expansion of international trade was made possible by the building of an extensive railway system in India in the second half of the nineteenth century. The first line, which ran for twenty miles out of Bombay, was opened in 1853. By 1906, when all the major trunk routes were in place, there was nearly 30,000 miles of track. Railways had a considerable impact on the rural economy, and on internal migration and social mobility. They aided famine relief, linked large parts of the interior to the ports, and facilitated the movement of goods for domestic and foreign movement.

The first lines were of 'broad gauge', thought necessary to withstand Indian climatic conditions. Later metre gauge track was laid. By the 1900s there were as many as 96 different lines opened to the public and supervised by 33 separate railway companies.

11. Flowering of Culture

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Portrait painting is to depict a person in the form of real life image in the form of a portrait.
2. Uday Shankar, was a dancer who developed a unique style by merging Western and traditional Indian techniques. He selected themes based on Indian mythology and current political issues.
3. Gateway of India, Elehpanta caves and the Chhatrata Shivaji Terminus.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. c. 4. c.

C. Mention the year in which the following newspapers started :

- Ans.** 1. 1780 2. 1784 3. 1785 4. 1786 5. 1789

D. Fill in the blanks:

- Ans.** 1. Raja Ravi Verma was a great painter from **Kerala**.
2. The press acted as a constant **watchdog** and **critic** of government policies.
3. Earlier, dance was usually performed in **temples** and **royal courts**.
4. **Lala Deen Dayal** was a pioneer among Indian photographers.
5. The Gateway of India was opened in **Dec. 1924** by **Viceroy Earl of Reading**.

E. Write true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. True

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Raja Ravi Verma was a great painter from Kerala. He combined the European style and his themes were mostly related to Indian epics and the Sanskrit literature.
2. The Europeans introduced gramophone records in India. This enabled a large number of people to listen to music outside royal courts. In the mid-eighteenth century, both Indian and Western classical music were popular in India. In due course Western jazz and pop music also became popular. Western instruments such as the piano, violin and guitar began to be used in Indian music; the harmonium was also adapted from a Western instrument.
3. Some of the prominent works of fiction of 19th and 20th centuries were :
- | Novelist | Work |
|------------------------------|---|
| Bankim Chandra | Anand Math (contains India's national song Vande Mataram) |
| Chatterjee | |
| Michael Madhusudan Dutta | Meghnadvadh Kavya |
| Bibhuti Bhushan Bandopadhyay | Pather Panchali |
| Rabindranath Tagore | Gora, Ghare Baire, |
| Munshi Premchand | Godaan, Rangbhoomi |
| Yashpal | Jhootha Sach |
| Phanishwar Nath Renu | Maila Anchal |
| Gopinath | Praja (Oriya) |
| Panna Lal Patel | Makelajeet (Gujarati) |
| Sarat Chandra Chattopadhyay | Srikanta, Devdas |
| Tara Shankar Chattopadhyay | Ganadevta |
| Manik Bandopadhyay | Padmanadir Majhi |
4. Bombay (now Mumbai) was given to English King Charles II as dowry during his marriage to the Portuguese princess, Catherine of Braganza in 1662. In 1687, the English East India Company shifted its western headquarters from Surat to Bombay. Thereafter, many new buildings began to be constructed in British style. Colonel Thomas Cowper designed the **Town Hall**. The building is 200 feet, long and 100 feet wide. The building was completed in 1833. The **University of Bombay** was established in 1857. In the same year, universities were established in the two other Presidency towns of Calcutta and Madras. It was one of the first educational institutions to be established following the Wood's Despatch on Education in 1854. One of the most fascinating buildings of the British rule is the **Gateway of India**. It was built to commemorate the visit of King George V in 1911. It was designed by George Wittet to symbolise the magnificence of British rule.
5. Rabindranath Tagore developed a new style of free style dancing to be

combined with his style of music called Rabindra Sangeet. The dance form developed by him is called Rabindra Nritya.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. In the ancient days, we had Mathura school of Art, Rajput school of Art and Gandhara School of Art which flourished. Later in the 19th century, we witnessed the new classical styles of painting. New art schools were formed in **Bengaluru**, **Chennai** and **Kolkata** which patronised new techniques in painting.

Calcutta School of Industrial Art was established in 1864 which became the Government School of Art later. The emergence of Pahari School and Rajasthani School of Art are landmarks in the history of India. These paintings are known as **miniature paintings**. Places like Garhwal, Jaipur and Baroli are famous for such art.

Another regional style developed in Tanjore in South India. This art is famous for mural decorations and themes from Puranas.

2. Many developments took place in Indian languages with the influence of modern ideas.

i. Literature became more realistic. Literary works began portraying day-to-day problems and struggles of individuals. The drama *Neel Darpan* by Dinabandhu Mitra spoke about the miserable plight of the indigo cultivators.

ii. Nationalism and freedom movement became subjects of literary works, replacing mythology and religion. This helped in the spread of the spirit of nationalism.

iii. The introduction of the printing press contributed greatly to the production and spread of literature.

iv. New forms of literary writing, such as novel, short story, drama and essays began to develop. Prose became the dominant style of writing.

v. A plethora of literary works was produced in regional Indian languages.

3. i. Dance, drama, music and theatre are called performing arts because they are performed on stage. During colonial rule the performing arts languished on account of colonial obsession with their own culture.

The performing arts like classical dance forms became truly nationalist in character. The most famous classical dance forms (in parenthesis are shown the state of their origin) are **Bharatnatyam** (Tamil Nadu), **Kathakali** and **Mohiniyattam** (Kerala), **Kuchipudi** (Andhra Pradesh), **Odissi** (Orissa), **Manipuri** (Manipur) and **Kathak** (Uttar Pradesh).

ii. European influence was also seen on the sculptures of the period, which presented a fusion of Indian and European techniques. They featured mostly secular themes, as opposed to earlier sculptures which mostly had religious themes.

In the late 19th century, **photography** was introduced in India.

Lala Deen Dayal was a pioneer among Indian photographers.

He captured the architecture, geography, historical ruins and people of the country.

4. Some of the best examples of colonial architecture in India can be found in Madras (now Chennai). Here can be seen structures built in the classical Greek style, (for example, the Pachiyappa's Hall), the Gothic style (for example, the San Thome Basilica), and the Indo-Saracenic style of architecture (for example, Madras High Court). It combines domes, minarets and trellis-work, with arches, spires and stained glass. The British East India Company set up a permanent trading station on the Indian coastline in the form of **Fort St George** in Chennai. Fort St George is not a fort in the true sense of the term. It is rather an arbitrary area enclosed by a massive stonewall. Historical personalities like Elihu Yale, Thomas Pitt, Robert Cliver, and Lord Cornwallis either lived in or frequented the fort in their day. In 1687, Elihu Yale became the governor of the fort and contributed to the development of the city of Madras (now called Chennai). In 1698, Thomas Pitt was commissioned as the governor of the fort. Robert Clive spent a number of years in this fort.

12. The Nationalist Movement

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Bal Gangadhar Tilak, Bipin Chandra Pal and Lala Lajpat Rai were the most popular extremist leaders.
2. Due to an violent incident in Chauri Chaura in which 22 policeman were burnt alive, Gandhiji called off the non-cooperation movement.
3. The Simon Commission was opposed because all the members of the commission were British.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. c. 3. a. 4. b.

C. Rearrange the following events in their proper order :

- Ans.** The partition of Bengal; Morley Minto Reforms; Lucknow pact; Champaran Movement; Jalianwala Bagh Massacre; The Government of India Act of 1919; Formation of the Hindustan Republican Association; Gandhi Irvin pact; Quit India movement; The Division of India.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The policies of the British were very **ruthless**.
2. The **extremists** were opposed to the ideology and techniques of the Moderates.
3. The system of **dyarchy** was introduced in the Montague-Chelmsford reforms.
4. The elections to the **provinces** were held in 1946.
5. The Muslim League declared **16th August** as 'Direct Action Day'.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. False 4. False 5. True

F. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. 1905 → a. Gandhiji arrived in India
2. 1915 → b. Quit India Movement
3. 1946 → c. Non-cooperation Movement
4. 1920s → d. Cabinet Mission
5. 1942 → e. Partition of Bengal

G. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The Indian National movement gave a platform to the aspirations and demands of the people of India. This event ultimately occupied a prominent place in the world history. Due to the guidance and leadership of Mahatma Gandhi, it became legendary. India was placed under the Direct control of the British crown, after the revolt of 1857. The British treated the Indians very badly and punished Indians for taking part in the revolt of 1857. Apart from this the policies of British were very ruthless. They exploited Indian peasants, the cottage industries started declining, market was unvustly flooded with foreign goods, unemployment and discontent prevailed in the society. It was during this period that British introduced education in order to educate a group of people who will be of some use to the Britishers in their administration. They planned the spread of education. Many Indians imbibed national and secular feelings. They also developed democratic and political attitude.
2. A section of Congressmen who had lost faith in British Government began to drift towards extremism. This radical faction of the Congress came to be known as Extremists. They were opposed to the ideology and techniques of the Moderates.
3. The British wanted to weaken the national movement, of which Bengal was the main centre. Thus, they decided to divide Bengal on the bases of religion.
4. General Dyer ordered to open fire on peaceful demonstrators on the day of Baisakhi (April 13th 1919). Thousands of people died in Jalianwala Bagh massacre. There was huge criticism of the incident both by Indians and by westerners. Tagore even renounced his knighthood to show his protest.

H. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The first phase of the Congress was confined only to the educated classes. The leaders of the Indian National Congress submitted their grievances in the form of prayers and petitions. The early demands of the Indian National Congress were to achieve :
- Increased participation in Legislative Assembly,
 - Indianisation of the Civil service,
 - Reduction of military expenditure and tax burden,
 - Providing more funds for educating Indians, etc.
- All these demands were very just. They did not demand for independence in the early stages of the freedom movement. Most of the early Congressmen believed in constitutional methods and were humble and mild in their criticism of British government. They were

known as **Moderates**. Up to 1905 the Moderates had firm faith in British sense of justice and fair play, hence, they continued with prayers and petitions. But the British turned a deaf ear to them. Then the Indian Nationalists realized that the British government was not sincere and just. So, they gradually lost faith, which ultimately resulted in the rise of Extremists within the Congress.

Extremist Phase (1905-1918)

A section of Congressmen who had lost faith in British Government began to drift towards extremism. This radical faction of the Congress came to be known as **Extremists**. They were opposed to the ideology and techniques of the Moderates. They preferred not to get out of the Congress but to capture it from within. The highest goal set by the Moderates at the Congress session of 1905 was the attainment of colonial form of self government. But the ideal before the Extremists was absolute autonomy for India. They fixed swaraj (literally 'Self Rule') as their goal. **Bal Gangadhar Tilak** declared that 'Swaraj is my birthright and I shall have it.' The leaders of the extremists were **B G Tilak** in Maharashtra, **Bipin Chandra Pal** in Bengal and **Lala Lajpat Rai** in Punjab. The partition of Bengal made them to come on the same side.

2. To solve the constitutional problems of India, the British Parliament passed the Government of India Act in 1935. Federation of the Indian provinces and autonomy to provinces were provided in this Act. The system of dyarchy was proposed at the centre. Defence, foreign affairs, tribal areas, etc. were the reserved subjects to be administered by the Governor-General and remaining subjects were to be administered, by the Governor-General on the advice of the ministers who were responsible to the Central Legislature. Special powers were given to the Governors. They could veto the bills passed by the legislature and issue ordinances and have full control over the civil service. People were not satisfied with the provincial autonomy granted to the provinces. The legislative in six provinces including Bengal, Madras, Bombay, UP, Bihar and Assam were to consist of two houses, while in the five provinces, it consisted of one house only.
3. The national movement grew stronger after the formation of the **Indian National Army** (INA). It was popularly known as **Azad Hind Fauj**. The leader of this army was General Mohan Singh. It consisted largely of Indian prisoners of war who were serving the British and had been captured by the Japanese during the Second World War. Even some Indians settled in South East Asia had joined this army raising its strength to over 45,000 soldiers.
In 1943, Subhash Chandra Bose, popularly called 'Netaji', took the command of the Azad Hind Fauj. On 21 October 1943 the 'Provincial Government' of Independent India was formed in Singapore. In 1944, the Azad Hind Fauj entered India through the north-eastern route. In May 1944, the army conquered Imphal and Kohima. Bose gave the Slogan 'Dilli Chalo' and 'Jai Hind'.

Exercise

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. We need a constitution because it defines the power and duties of the government so that the government works under the framework of law. The Constitution, also, sees to it that the rights of the citizens are safeguarded and not violated in any way.
2. To protect our fundamental rights we can move to court for redressal.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. a. 3. a.

C. Cancel out the incorrect option :

- Ans.** 1. The constitution (prohibits/allows) human trafficking.
 2. People choose their leaders in a (democracy/monarchy).
 3. The Directive Principles are given in the (Part IV/Part II).
 4. (Dr Rajendra Prasad/Dr B.R. Ambedkar) was the chairman of the drafting committee.
 5. The fundamental Duties were incorporated in the year (1947/1976).

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. A constitution defines the **power** and **duties** of the government.
 2. **B.R. Ambedkar** was the Chairman of the Drafting Committee.
 3. We have **Panchayati Raj** at the village level.
 4. Members of the **parliament** are elected by people through direct voting.
 5. **Socialism** means that everyone must enjoy social and economic equality.

E. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. False

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. A Constitution is a set of rules and principles according to which the government of a country runs. A Constitution defines the power and duties of the government so that the government works under the framework of law.
2. Right to Equality : Right to freedom ; Right Against Exploitation ; Right to freedom of Religion ; Education and Cultural Rights ; Right to Constitutional Remedy ;
3. Each citizen of India who is above 18 years of age has the right to cast vote. Universal adult franchise is important in breaking the clutches of hegemony of majority group in society. The universal adult franchise also respects the fact, that every adult is a responsible citizen irrespective of his/her socio-economic background or level of education.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. A Constitution defines the power and duties of the government so that the government works under the framework of law. It defines the type of government a country has adopted and powers and position of the three organs of the government, namely, the Executive, the Legislature and

the Judiciary and at the same time it also explains the relation between the government and the citizens of that country. In this way the Constitution sees to it that the rights of the citizens are safeguarded and not violated in any way.

2. **The Fundamental Rights**

The Constitution of India guarantees certain fundamental rights to the citizens of India. These fundamental rights are the basic rights and thus, make the soul of the constitution. No one can take away these fundamental rights or can encroach upon these fundamental rights :

Right to Equality : It ensures that all the citizens are equal in the eyes of the law and cannot be discriminated upon on the basis of caste, creed, colour, religion etc.

Right to freedom : Allows people to form associations, express themselves, move freely in the country, reside in any part of the country, practise any trade or profession.

Right Against Exploitation : Child labour (for kids up to 14 years of age), human trafficking, forced labour, are punishable crimes.

Right to freedom of Religion : Allows people to follow and practice religion of their choice.

Education and Cultural Rights : Special rights to minorities to establish education institutions and societies to preserve and promote their culture.

Right to Constitutional Remedy : If any of the rights of the citizens are violated then they can move to the Courts for the enforcement of their rights under Right to Constitutional Remedy.

3. The constitution divides the state into three organs— the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary. The legislature of India is called the parliament which consists of the President and the two houses, i.e., Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha. The executive is that organ of the government which settles disputes related to constitutional matters.

The constitution made the three organs with different powers so that they can keep check on each other and can prevent the misuse of power by any branch of the state.

4. Federalism refers to the government of a country at more than one level. In India, we have government at central, state and the Panchayati Raj at the village level. It was a challenge in front of the constitution makers to build such a system of the government which would work from top to the bottom of the country and from person to person. They wanted such a government which was familiar with the local structures of a state and village, and not only a government sitting in the capital making all the decisions. Now every state in India enjoys power and works under the central government. The constitution contains a list that provide details on all the issues that each level of government can make laws on. India is governed by laws and policies which are made by each level of government in India.

2. Secularism

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. We should separate religion from state to safeguard the rights of the minorities and to develop a true democratic country.
2. Secularism is important in India because here people of all faith live together. Secularism ensures that all are treated equally.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. b. 2. c. 3. c.





C. Correct the following statements :

- Ans.** 1. A theocratic State is a State which is organised **with** the involvement of religion.
2. **Secularism** maintains the coexistence of all the religions.
3. Fundamental rights are based on the **secular** principles.
4. In the USA the government **cannot** declare a religion as official religion.
5. Secularism ensures that **no one** faces discrimination on grounds of religion.

D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Majority tyranny** is still found in many parts of the world.
2. **Secularism** enjoys a special status in India.
3. Indian secularism works to prevent religious **domination** and **strategy of non-interference**.
4. A **Sikh** youth does not have to wear a helmet.
5. In USA, the state and religion are **separate**.

E. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Hindu → a. 
2. Muslim → b. 
3. Christian → c. 
4. Sikh → d. 

F. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The separation of religion from the state is called secularism.
2. Secularism is not an outside concept planted in India but has its domain in India. Secularism enjoys a special status in India because it is a vast country with various religions and communities. So, secularism maintains the coexistence of all the religions.
3. Indian secularism work to prevent the domination of the majority through a strategy of non-interference. In order to respect the sentiments of all religions, state makes certain exceptions for particular religious communities. Thus, in India, a Sikh youth does not have to wear a helmet as a mark of respect to his religion.

G. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. According to the Indian Constitution, India is a secular country in which one religious community does not dominate another nor the state enforces any particular religion. On the contrary, it is important that a few members of the same religious community do not dominate others. State does not take away religious freedom of individuals. In India, the Constitution uses a strategy by which it keeps distance from religion. Indian secularism works to prevent religious domains and discrimination. The Indian Constitution guarantees fundamental rights that are based on the secular principles.
2. The Constitution of USA prohibits the legislature from making laws which respect the establishment of a religion or which prohibits the free exercise of religion. In the USA the government cannot declare a religion as official religion. Additionally, the government cannot impose a particular religion on the public. The secularism as practised in the USA is somewhat different from what is being practised in India. There is complete separation of State and religion in the USA. On the other hand, in the case of India we have seen that there is no such complete separation of State and religion. In India, the state sometimes interferes in religious affairs. But these interferences are done in order to protect the basic tenets of protecting the fundamental rights of people. So whenever there is a chance of encroachment of fundamental rights due to religion, the state interferes in religious matters.
3. Most countries in the world today have various religious communities. In almost every country, where different faiths are practised, there is usually one religious group which is larger than the other. It is likely that this religious group, which is in majority, secures, political power. In such a situation that group might exploit its supremacy for the benefit of only its own groups. Other religious groups will not be able to influence the policies and strategies of the state. Minority religious groups will not be able to influence the policies and strategies of the state. Such a situation goes against the basic principles of democracy. Thus, secularism eliminates religious faith from matters of states and ensures that no one faces discrimination on ground of religion.

3. Government at the Centre

Exercises

A. Answer the questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The laws in India are made by the Members of the Parliament, who are the elected representatives of the citizens of India and present their interest in the Parliament.
2. There are 545 members in the Lok Sabha.
3. Vice-president

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The makers of the Indian Constitution accepted the **British parliamentary system**.
2. **12** members in the Rajya Sabha are nominated by the President.
3. The **vice-president** is the presiding officer of the Rajya Sabha.
4. The President of India is the **nominal** head.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. True

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. In the parliamentary form of government, the head of the government is the Prime Minister. The Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers are collectively responsible to the legislature and can be removed by it. In the presidential form of government, the President is directly elected by the people and he does not depend on the legislature for support. Therefore, the makers of the Constitution felt that this could lead to authoritarian rule. This is why they chose the parliamentary system for India.
2. The term of the Lok Sabha is five years, but it can be dissolved before it completes its five-year term. This happens if a 'no-confidence' motion is passed against the government in the Lok Sabha. If no other leader can form a government with a majority, the Lok Sabha is dissolved and fresh elections take place. The term of the Lok Sabha can be extended during a national emergency.
3. The term of the Lok Sabha is five years, but it can be dissolved before it completes its five-year term. This happens if a 'no-confidence' motion is passed against the government in the Lok Sabha. If no other leader can form a government with a majority, the Lok Sabha is dissolved and fresh elections take place. The term of the Lok Sabha can be extended during a national emergency.
- The Rajya Sabha is a permanent house and cannot be dissolved. One-third of its members retire every two years and an equal number of members are elected in their place. Ordinarily the term of Rajya Sabha is six years.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.** 1. The Lok Sabha is also called the Lower House of Parliament or the House of the People. At present, it has 545 members. Of these, 543 members are directly elected by the people through general elections held every five years. The country is divided into constituencies. From each constituency, a member is elected to the Lok Sabha. Seats are reserved for the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes. The President of India can nominate two members from the Anglo-Indian community if he/she feels that this community is not adequately represented.

To be eligible for membership of the Lok Sabha, a person should:

- Be a citizen of India
- Be at least 25 years of age
- Be of sound mind

- Not be bankrupt
- Not convicted in a criminal case

The term of the Lok Sabha is five years, but it can be dissolved before it completes its five-year term. This happens if a 'no-confidence' motion is passed against the government in the Lok Sabha. If no other leader can form a government with a majority, the Lok Sabha is dissolved and fresh elections take place. The term of the Lok Sabha can be extended during a national emergency.

The party with majority seats in the Lok Sabha forms the government and the party with second highest number of seats form the Opposition party. In fact, all the other parties in the Lok Sabha, except the ruling party/coalition are referred to as the Opposition. The main task of the opposition is to keep a check on the working of the government, pointing out its shortcomings and putting forward the interests and opinions of the people in their constituencies and the general public at large.

The implementation of the law is in the hands of the Prime Minister and his Cabinet of Ministers, but the law making procedure involves all the Members of the Parliament and the Opposition tries to garner support for policy decisions that it deems is necessary for the well being of the citizens of the country.

When the Parliament is in session, the opposition and other members can questions and demand information from the government on various issues during the question hour. The various issues are debated upon, policies of the government criticized and information is sought on the status of achievement of planned targets. For the healthy functioning of a democracy, it is important that the members of the Opposition are vigilant and keep the government on its toes. These elected representatives of the people have the duty to act in the interest of the people and responsibility to protect the masses from the abuse of the power.

2. **Rajya Sabha**

Members of the Rajya Sabha are elected by people's representatives from the state legislatures. There are 245 members in the Rajya Sabha out of which 12 members are nominated by the President. The President nominates members for the Rajya Sabha from various walks of life, like journalists, artists, fine arts, musicians, social workers, players, etc. The Rajya Sabha is a permanent house and cannot be dissolved. One-third of its members retire every two years and an equal number of members are elected in their place. Ordinarily the term of Rajya Sabha is six years.

The parliament makes new laws or amends an existing law by passing a bill. Most of the bills require a simple majority to be passed. Finance bill requires absolute majority. The two-third majority is called absolute majority. If a finance bill fails to get absolute majority then the government comes in the minority. After a bill is passed from the Lok Sabha, it is sent to the Rajya Sabha. After the Bill is passed from both the houses, it is sent to the President for final assent. Once the President

signs on the bill, the bill comes into effect.

4. The Judiciary

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. In a democratic country like India, the role of judiciary is significant. Judiciary administers justice according to law. Judiciary can promote social justice through its judgement otherwise the common will suffer a lot.
2. Yes, It is possible
3. District courts, revenue court, nayaya panchayats and lok adalats.

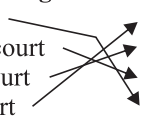
B. Tick (✓) the correct answers :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. c. 3. b. 4. b.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The **Judiciary** is a faithful keeper of Constitutional assurances.
2. Our constitution makers established an **independent** judiciary in India.
3. The Supreme Court is also the **highest cart of India**.
4. The district judge acts as the **session judge** also.
5. Courts play an important role in protecting the **rights** of the citizens.

D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. High court a. Gets most of the cases
2. Panchayat court b. Highest court in the country
3. Supreme court c. Petty disputes
4. District court d. Appellate court in state
- 

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. In our country the judiciary is independent. This can be proved by the following facts.
- The judges are not appointed by the executive.
 - The judges work independently without the interference of either the executive or the legislature.
 - The judicial system works as a unified organ under the control of the supreme court.
 - Once appointed, the judges cannot be removed easily from their post.
 - The salaries and allowances of the judges cannot be decreased during their tenure.
2. Appellate power means to hear appeals against the decision of the lower courts.
3. In a country like India, it was difficult for the poor people to access the courts and seek justice. Keeping this in mind, the Supreme Court in 1980s made a Public Interest Legislation or PIL so that poor people could easily access the courts and justice. It allowed any individual or organisation to file a PIL in high court or in the Supreme Court on behalf of those whose rights were being violated.
4. **District Courts**

For administrative convenience each state is divided into districts. At the district level, the court of the district judge is the highest court for dealing with civil cases. The highest district court for dealing with the criminal cases is the court of sessions judge.

The district judge acts as the session judge also. These two courts at the district level can hear appeals against the decisions of the lower courts. Appeals against the decisions of the district courts are taken to the high court.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The judiciary is the third organ, which protects the rights and freedom of citizens. It administers justice and settles disputes in accordance with the laws of the Constitution.

The Judiciary is a faithful keeper of constitutional assurances. An independent and impartial judiciary can make the legal system vibrant. Our Indian judiciary can be regarded as a creative judiciary. Justice K. Subha Rao explains the function of the judiciary as follows :

- It is a balancing wheel of the federation
- It keeps balance between Fundamental Rights and social justice.
- It Keeps all forms of authorities within the bounds.
- It controls the Administrative Tribunal.

2. **Subordinate Courts**

Below the high court there are several lower courts known in general as subordinate courts. These courts are, as mentioned earlier, supervised by the high courts. The different types of lower courts are, district courts, revenue courts, nayaya panchayats and lok adalats.

District Courts

For administrative convenience each state is divided into districts. At the district level, the court of the district judge is the highest court for dealing with civil cases. The highest district court for dealing with the criminal cases is the court of sessions judge.

The district judge acts as the session judge also. These two courts at the district level can hear appeals against the decisions of the lower courts. Appeals against the decisions of the district courts are taken to the high court.

Revenue Courts

Disputes in matters of payment of revenue are settled through revenue courts. The Board of Revenue is the highest revenue court in a state. Appeals from these courts can be taken to the high court. The court of the collector is the most important revenue court in a district. There are several lower courts below it.

Nyaya Panchayats

Nyaya Panchayats are small law courts found in the rural areas. These resolved petty civil and criminal cases. They also levy small fines. A nyaya panchayat often serves three to four villages.

Lok Adalats

Seeking justice is a time consuming and quite an expensive process in our country. Lok Adalats deliver speedy and inexpensive justice. They

encourage the settlement of disputes through compromise between the parties. Lok Adalats are presided over by judicial officers and other persons who possess such qualifications as may be prescribed by the State.

3. Powers and Functions of the Supreme Court

Original Jurisdiction : The Supreme Court has original jurisdiction over cases involving :

- disputes between two or more state governments
- disputes between the state government and central government
- disputes between the union and any state or states on one side and one or more states on the other side
- disputes related to constitutional validity of central laws.

The Supreme Court exercises appellate jurisdiction over the decisions of high courts and other courts. It is the final court that decides appeals.

Advisory jurisdiction is exercised by the Supreme Court when the President seeks advice on constitutional issues. If the President of India desires to obtain the opinion of the Supreme Court on a question of law or fact which is of public importance, he can refer such a matter to the Supreme Court for its opinion. However, the opinion of the Supreme Court is not binding on the President.

Under supervisory jurisdiction, the Supreme Court supervises the functioning of all the courts below it and sees whether it is following the procedures or not.

Judicial review : The Supreme Court has the power to examine the validity of the laws passed by the Union and the states.

Guardian of the Fundamental Rights : Every citizen can go to the Supreme Court if he/she believes that their fundamental Rights have been violated by any person, or group of persons or the State itself.

Court of Record : The Supreme Court is also the Court of Record. All the decisions made by the Supreme Court or all the proceedings of the Supreme Court are kept as record. They can be used for reference either by the High Court or the advocates. The decisions made by the Supreme Court are binding on all other courts in India.

4. Criminal Law

Deals with the conduct of Act that is defined by law as offence. Example: Theft, murder

Criminal case begins with the lodging of an FIR (First Information Report) with the police. After investigating the crime, the police files a case.

The accused can be sent to jail and can also be fined, if found guilty.

Civil Law

The Act deals with harm or injury to rights of individuals. Example: property disputes or land of easement.

The affected party only can file a petition to the relevant court.

Specific relief, asked by the petitioner is given by the court.

5. The Criminal Justice System

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The highest police official in a district is the superintendent of police who is answerable to the district collector.
2. A Public Prosecutor is a gazetted officer. It is believed that he/she would be unbiased and impartial and thereby an aid in a fair judgement.
3. A fair trial is the one which ensures that a person's life or liberty can be taken away only by following a reasonable and just legal procedure

B. Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. a. 3. c. 4. a.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The **inspectors** of police supervises about ten police stations.
2. The **accused** has the right to seek help from a defense lawyer.
3. The police cannot **torture** or **ill treat** an accused person.
4. The **Public prosecute** fights the case on behalf of the state.
5. The **Defense Lawyer** fights the case on behalf of the accused.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The four key players in the criminal justice system are the police, the public prosecutor, defense lawyer and the judges. The role played by each of them in investigating the crime and delivering justice is outlined below :
2. The **FIR** is a written complaint to formally register a crime that has been committed. An FIR can be filed by either the victim of a crime or by someone on behalf of the victim. Other people can also report to the police when a crime is committed. An FIR is normally supposed to be filed only at the police station under whose jurisdiction the crime has been committed.
3. The prosecution as well as punishment for the crime is the responsibility of the State and not that of the victim of the crime. On behalf of the State (and therefore the society), such prosecution is performed by a Public Prosecutor who is appointed by the State. A Public Prosecutor is a gazetted officer. It is believed that he/she would be unbiased and impartial and thereby an aid in a fair judgement. The Public Prosecutor should place before the court all the evidence in her/his possession whether in favour or against the accused.
4. The defense lawyer is the lawyer of the accused. The Constitution places the responsibility upon the State to provide a lawyer to any citizen, who is unable to engage one due to poverty or other disability. The defense lawyer first of all meets the accused and hears the whole incident from him/her, so as to acquaint himself/herself with the facts. He/she attends the court sessions when the trial begins and carefully listens to the public prosecutor and the victim. He/she has the right to cross-examine the victim and can also call other witnesses and the

police inspector who had written the FIR. Finally the defense lawyer presents the whole case before the judge.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. Rights of Arrested Person

- The constitution and criminal laws of India give certain rights to arrested person. Some of them are listed below.
 - At the time of arrest, the person alleged of crime has the right to be informed of the offense for which he is being arrested.
 - The arrested person has to be brought before the nearest magistrate within 24 hours.
 - The police cannot torture him or till treat him or shoot him during investigation while in custody.
 - Confessions made during the investigation in police custody cannot be used as evidence in the court of law.
 - No child less than 15 years of age and no woman can be called for interrogation to the police station alone.
2. The Supreme Court of India has laid down specific requirements and procedures that the police and other agencies have to follow for the arrest, detention and interrogation of any person. These are known as the D.K. Basu Guidelines. Some of these guidelines are as follows:
- The police officials who carry out the arrest or interrogation should bear clear, accurate and visible identification and name tags with their designations.
 - A memo of arrest should be prepared at the time of arrest and should include the time and date of arrest. It should also be attested by at least one witness who could include a family member of the person arrested. The arrest memo should be counter-signed by the person arrested.
 - The person arrested, detained or being interrogated has a right to inform a relative, friend or well-wisher.
 - When a friend or relative lives outside the district, the time, place of arrest and venue of custody must be notified by police within 8 to 12 hours after arrest.

3. A **fair trial** is the one which ensures that a person's life or liberty can be taken away only by following a reasonable and just legal procedure. Article 21 of the Constitution which gurantees the right to life states that a person's life or liberty can be taken away only after a reasonable and just legal procedure.

A trial is unfair in a case where the court did not give a copy of the chargesheet and statement of witnesses to the accused. If the trial is held in a secret location without the accused and he is not given any lawyer and had already decided that the accused is guilty, then in such a case, it is an unfair trial.

A person enjoys Right to Life under Article 21 of the Constitution. For a just and reasonable fair procedure, the accused person is tried in an open court. He/she is defended by a lawyer. The case is even cross-examined by the prosecution lawyer. When evidence is not found

against the accused he/she is acquitted. It then becomes a fair trial. All citizens, irrespective of caste, colour, creed, gender, religion, etc. have a chance of a free trial.

According to our Constitution, the police, the court, the prosecutor and the 'Judge' should carry their roles in a proper manner so that justice can be done to everyone without any discrimination.

6. Social Justice and the Marginalised

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. Those sections of people who are pushed towards the margins of the society and even denied access to certain basic rights are considered marginalised.
2. **Manual scavenging** is considered one of the lowest, most polluting and degrading "occupations" where mainly people from a lower caste cleans dry latrines with their hands and dump human excreta at the village outskirts.
3. Dr. Bindeshwar Pathak founded Sulabh International.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answers :

- Ans.** 1. a. 2. a. 3. a.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **Marginalisation** means not being accepted by the society at large.
2. The main cause of social inequalities is the **Caste system**.
3. The lower castes still feel **deprived** and **marginalised**.
4. The **right to equality** gives all citizens the right to get equal opportunities.
5. The minority of the manual scavengers are **Men and children**.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. Marginalisation refers to the tendency within the society to push those who are considered lacking the desired traits to the margin or periphery.
2. The communities whether religious or lingual who have less number of people of their own sect and religion in a particular region or regions are termed as minorities.
3. **Scheduled Castes**
They are the castes which are treated as untouchables in the caste hierarchy of India. The constitution of India defines the Scheduled Castes as the ones who were called as untouchable in the society.
- Scheduled Tribes (Adivasis)**
The people or castes which resided in the forest and hilly areas and were socially discarded and were economically backward are called Scheduled Tribes.
4. The tribals also suffered social inequality. They were placed at the lower end of the social order. Under British rule, they were economically exploited. They were employed as cheap labour and were dislodged

from their homes in the forests. Till now many tribal villages do not have electricity.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

Ans. 1. The constitution has made some provisions to achieve this. Many of the Fundamental Rights and Directive Principles laid down in the constitution seek to ensure social and economic justice for Indian citizens. Some examples are given below.

- The right to equality gives all citizens the right to get equal opportunities. Article 15 of the constitution expressly forbids discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth. And, Article 17 states that untouchability is abolished, and its practice in any form is punishable by law.
 - The right to freedom gives all citizens the right to do any work of their choice.
 - The right against exploitation protects citizens from being forced to do any work or being forced to work without pay.
 - The right to freedom of religion and the cultural and educational rights allow minority groups to follow their own beliefs and promote their own languages and traditions.
 - Every child aged below 14 has the right to get early childhood care and education up to the age of 6 and free primary education after that.
 - For the fair distribution of wealth among the people, the constitution has directed governments to ensure adequate means of livelihood for all citizens, fair wages for workers and equal pay for men and women doing equal work.
2. Some of the discriminations manual scavengers face on a daily basis are :
- They are not allowed to enter houses.
 - They are not allowed to touch anything that belongs to the upper castes.
 - Due to acute poverty, their children do not get education and face severe discrimination.

Men, women and children—particularly from the Chuhar, Methathar, Halalkhor, Lalbaghi, Bhangi, Thotti and Jamadar lower castes—are commonly employed as manual scavengers in India.

Upper-caste Hindus consider the Dalits as being untouchables. The presence, touch or even the mere reference to a lower caste is considered to be polluting by the upper caste. The Dalits employed as manual scavengers are considered to be untouchable even by other Dalits.

Manual scavenging is carried out without any form of protective gear. Even simple equipment like a face mask is not provided. A scavenger who enters a sewer without any protective gear is exposed to many forms of toxic chemical and disease-causing bacteria.

Manual scavenging is not limited to cleaning clogs in sewers. It is common in India to find dry latrines (non-flush) across the country. Dry latrines are constructed and maintained by villages, municipalities and even the Indian railways.

7. Enforcing Laws

Exercises

A. Answer these questions orally :

- Ans.** 1. The government is mainly responsible for the development.
2. Laws help in ensuring that there are good relations among the workers, owners, farmers, consumers and business persons in a progressive manner and no one is taking advantage of another.
3. The value of a worker is low in India because people are ready to work for low wages.

B. Tick (✓) the correct answers :

- Ans.** 1. c. 2. c. 3. c.

C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. The laws are an effort to check the **unfair** and **uncivilised** practices.
2. A **person** always wants to earn the highest possible wage.
3. No one can be forced to work for **low** wages.
4. The gas leaked from the pesticide plant of Union Carbide was **methyl-isocyanite (mic)**.
5. Private **companies** and **businessman** work for the sole purpose of earning profit.

D. Write true or false :

- Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. False

E. Answer the following questions in brief :

- Ans.** 1. The Right against Exploitation says that no one can be forced to work for low wages or to work under bondage because the Constitution has laid down that no child below the age of 14 shall be employed to work in any factory or mines or any other hazardous employment.
In spite of the above Constitutional provision it has been found in a survey that more than 15 million children were working in hazardous occupations. This very fact forced the government to amend the Child Labour Prevention Act in 2006. It prohibits children under fourteen years of age from working in hotels, restaurants, shops, etc., it declares that employing these children is a punishable offence. Anybody violating this law is to be penalised with a jail term of three months to two years and/or fine of ₹10,000 to ₹ 20,000. Only by passing such laws and enforcing them strictly can ensure the goal or social justice.
2. A worker does a job to earn his livelihood.
3. The government is responsible for the development, especially, in infrastructure and social sectors. For the purpose, it regulates development activities and economic activities largely through laws. Private sector organizations, contractors, business houses or even individuals, involve in many unfair practices in order to make more and more profit, which causes economical and social damages to the society and environment. Hence, the government controls from by drafting, making, enforcing, implementing and unholding laws as to prevent all these unfair practices to ensure social justice.
4. The continuous degradation of the environment and its pollution forced

the government to make new laws to protect the environment.

5. The Bhopal Gas Disaster was an eye-opener for authorities as well as for people. Earlier, safety laws were framed to protect workers only. Nobody ever gave a thought to safety of people living in the vicinity of a factory. The Bhopal Gas Disaster not only affected workers but also thousands of people who were not associated to the Union Carbide plant in any way.

Many environmental activists started pressurising the government to frame proper environmental laws. The government passed new laws to protect the environment. It was being felt that the environment should be protected because the environment would be used by people and many generations to come. The new laws mandated that the polluter would be held responsible for causing damage to the environment.

F. Answer the following questions in detail :

- Ans.**
1. Many people have to work under highly dangerous conditions where their safety is always at risk. For example; a construction worker is always at risk of getting injured from a falling brick or an iron beam. Imagine a construction worker who is working at the height of 50 feet or 100 feet from the ground level. If he is not tied to a proper harness he is always at risk of falling. Similarly, a worker in a factory is at risk of getting injured from machines or from raw materials. Injury of a worker can also result in permanent disability which would be akin to disaster for his family. There are laws which make it mandatory to provide proper safety arrangements at workplace. The employer needs to provide safety gears, like helmets and gloves to workers; if needed. In factory, proper installation of fire fighting equipments is necessary. There should be proper evacuation plans, in case of emergency.
 2. At midnight on 2 December, 1984, the world's worst industrial tragedy took place in Bhopal, India. An American company i.e. Union Carbide (UC) had a factory in the city in which it produced pesticides. Methyl-isocyanite (MIC) a highly poisonous gas-started leaking from the UC plant.

Actually, it is an example of lac of enforcement of the laws. The disaster was not an accident but the company had deliberately ignored the essential safety measures in order to cut costs. Just before the disaster a worker died of gas leakage and several workers were injured. But even then the company did not wake up.

People living around the company started coughing with each breath seeming as if breathing in fire.

Their eyes were burning. Within three days, more than 8000 people were dead.

Hundreds of thousands were maimed (wounded or injured very seriously and permanently). Among those who survived, had severe respiratory disorders, eye problems and other disorders. Children developed peculiar abnormalities.

UC-the company, stopped working and wound up, leaving behind tons of toxic chemicals. Most of these released poisonous gas.

3. Though there is a possibility of exploitation everywhere, markets and factories tend to exploit people more. Every business owner, manufacturer, producer, farmer, distributor, etc. wants to make as much profit as he can.

For this they cut costs by paying less wages to workers. They take advantage of larger working hours. They do not provide required facilities, environment, quality devices and safety training also. In case of any accident then even deny to compensate them properly.

To protect people from such conditions and exploitation, the government has made certain laws. It prescribes minimum purchasing price of certain farm produce, and sets minimum wages for the workers. It makes provisions for safety measures like-inspection and surveys, quality of goods, pollution, child labour, etc.

The laws are an effort to check the unfair and uncivilised practices.